

Step Ahead Series
Together to a bright future

CONNECT PLUS

3rd Prim.
2026

Second Term



By a group of specialists



Contents

Theme (3) How the world works

	Page
Part (1) Unit (7) Where are the family?	4
Test (1)	49
Unit (8) At the museum	51
Test (2)	81
Unit (9) At the hospital	83
Test (3)	120

Theme (4) Communication

Unit (10) We love adventure!	122
Test (4)	154
Unit (11) Keep in touch	156
Test (5)	185
Unit (12) Community connections	187
Test (6)	218

Part (2) The Readers

Non-Fiction Reader: The Grand Egyptian Museum	220
Fiction Reader: Nesma's Invention	230

Part (3) Listening Scripts	247
---	------------

Theme (3)
How the world works

Unit 7

Where are the family?
أين العائلة؟

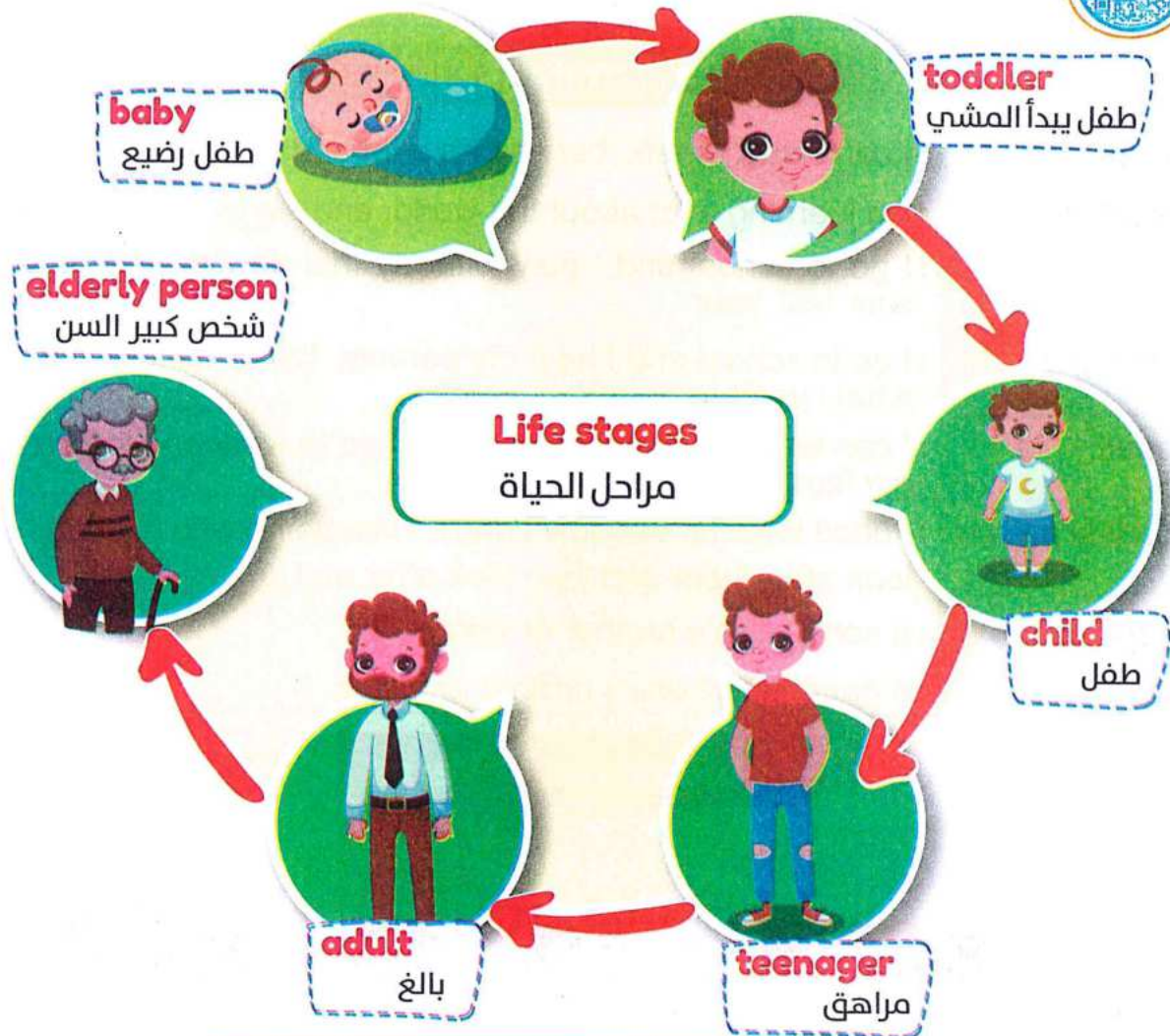


Objectives

Vocabulary	Life stages: baby, toddler, child, teenager, adult, elderly person Inherited traits: adapt, behave, characteristics, inherit, litter, newborn, offspring, organism, species, survival, trait Plants: bulb, cell, pollen grains, reproduce, seed
Language	- I used to have long hair, but now it's short. - I didn't use to be able to ride a bike, but now I can.
Reading	A text about identical twins; a text about animal families; a text about plant and animal adaptations
Phonics	ew, u-e, ue: new, used, blue
Life skills	Critical thinking: Empathy
Values	Appreciation of science: Curiosity
Issues and challenges	Environmental responsibility
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	Science: Inherited traits, animal babies / Adaptation in animals and in plants / Reproduction in plants

Lessons 1-2 Where are the family? & Language use

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

family	أسرة - عائلة	nephew	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
parents	الوالدين	niece	ابنة الأخ (الأخت)
grandparents	الأجداد	brother	أخ
grandchildren	الأحفاد	sister	أخت
cousins	أولاد العم (الخال)	friends	أصدقاء

tower	برج	is aged	 عمره
world	العالم	mountain	جبل
jewel	جوهرة	work (n)	عمل

Vocabulary Study

baby	: I can't walk or talk, but I sleep a lot and I like playing.
toddler	: I'm learning a lot about the world, and I'm learning to walk.
child	: I go to school and I play with my friends. I'm taller than I was last year.
teenager	: I go to school and I help my parents. I'm thinking about what I want to do after school.
adult	: I can walk, run, jump and swim. I go to work and look after my family.
elderly person	: I used to work, but now I don't. I like being with my family. I look after them and they look after me!
nephew	: a son of one's brother or sister
niece	: a daughter of one's brother or sister

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
learn	يتعلَّم	learned	learned
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
visit	يزور	visited	visited
climb	يتسلَّق	climbed	climbed
help	يساعد	helped	helped

Present		Past	PP
paint	يلون	paint	paint
cook	يطهو	cooked	cooked
play	يلعب - يعزف	played	played
work	يعمل	worked	worked
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	wanted
use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used
live	يعيش	lived	lived
love	يحب	loved	loved

أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular verbs

Present		Past	PP
read	يقرأ	read	read
build	يبني	built	built
hold	يمسك	held	held
make	يصنع - يعد	made	made
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
have (has)	يمتلك	had	had
do	يفعل - يؤدي	did	done
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
go	يذهب	went	gone
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
run	يجري	ran	run
know	يعرف	knew	known
see	يرى	saw	seen



1

نحن اليوم مع عائلتنا. لدينا الكثير من أبناء العمومة!

3

يَبْنِي آدَمَ بَرَجًا. إِنَّهُ وَلَدٌ جَيِّدٌ!

2

أمير عمره 13 سنة. هو مراهق. هو
يساعد أخيه آدم.

5

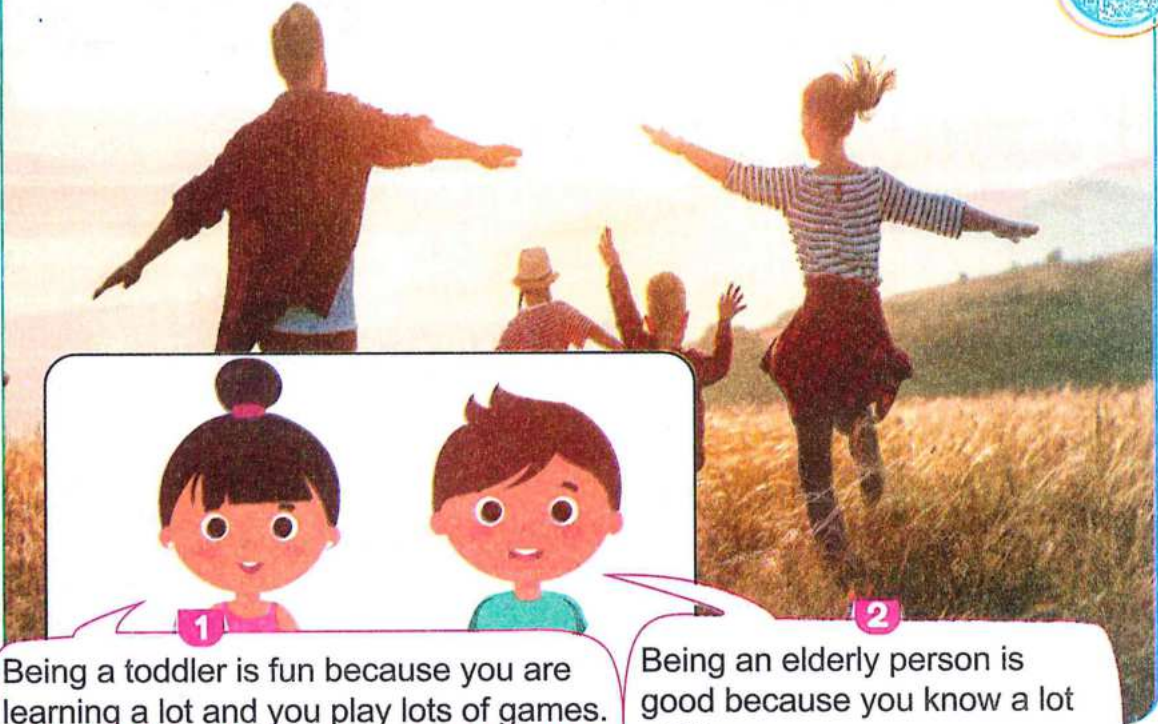
أحب رؤية عائلتي.

4

ابن أختي، طارق، طفل رضيع. أختي تحمله. انظر إلى ابنة أختي، لما. إنها تتعلم المشي!

What is good about each of the life stages?

ما الجيد في كل مرحلة من مراحل الحياة؟



1

Being a toddler is fun because you are learning a lot and you play lots of games.
كونك طفل تتعلم المشي شيئاً ممتع لأنك تتعلم الكثير وتلعب الكثير من الألعاب.

2

Being an elderly person is good because you know a lot of things.

كونك شخص كبير في السن شيئاً جيد لأنك تعرف الكثير من الأشياء.

Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

تُتبع بالفعل في المصدر تستطيع can

تُتبع بالفعل في المصدر يجب - لا بد must

تُتبع بالفعل في المصدر هيا بنا Let's

- ▶ I can help you.
- ▶ I must clean the kitchen.
- ▶ Let's go to the kitchen to have something to eat.

لاحظ أن:

مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (s - es - ed - ing ...)



Grammar Study



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like He } She } likes It } You } We } like They }	I → don't like He } She } doesn't like ... It } You } We } don't like They }	Do → I like? Does } he like? she like? it like? Do } you like? we like? they like?

Form:

التصريف الأول للفعل

يتكون من

- I **like** my family.
- She **walks** to school every morning.

■ We use it to express facts or habits.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادة (فعل متكرر الحدوث).

- We usually **play** tennis in the club.
- He **rides** his bike to school.

■ We use some words with the present simple tense such as:

نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

Key words:

- always دائماً
- usually عادة
- every (day - week - ..) كل (يوم - أسبوع..)
- often غالباً
- never أبداً - مطلقاً
- sometimes أحياناً

- ▶ Ali **sometimes** goes swimming.
- ▶ Tamer **never** helps in the kitchen.
- ▶ I **always** watch TV in the evening.

- We add (**s** or **es**) to the main verb if the subject is (**He - She - It - Singular noun**).

نضيف للفعل (**s** أو **es**) إذا كان الفاعل (**أى اسم مفرد - He - she - It**).

○ Amira **helps** her mom.

○ He **likes** fish.

- We add (**es**) to verbs that end in (**ss - sh - ch - o - x**).

نضيف (**es**) للأفعال المنتهية بـ (**ss - sh - ch - o - x**).

○ go → **goes**

○ brush → **brushes**

○ watch → **watches**

○ pass → **passes**

► Ahmed brush**es** his teeth in the morning.

- If the verb ends in (**y**) after a consonant, change (**y**) into (**i**) then add (**es**).

لو انتهى الفعل بالحرف (**y**) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن، يقلب الحرف (**y**) إلى (**i**) ثم نضيف (**es**).

○ He **flies** his kite on Friday.

- In the negative form, we use (**don't - doesn't**) then the bare verb.

عند نفي زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (**don't - doesn't**) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

Remember تذكر

He →

She →

It →

أى اسم مفرد →

does not
doesn't

I →

You →

We →

They →

أى اسم جمع →

do not
don't

○ We **don't go** to school on Friday.

○ Sherif **doesn't play** in the street.

- In the interrogative form, we use (**do - does**) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع البسيط نبدأ السؤال بـ (**do - does**) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

○ **Do** you like English?

► Yes, I **do**

○ **Do** they go to school every day?

► No, they **don't**.

Unit 7

- ☐ Does she watch TV? ▶ Yes, she **does**
☐ Does Hany help his mom? ▶ No, he **doesn't**.
☐ Where **do** you live? ▶ I **live** in Giza.
☐ When **does** Ola eat her lunch? ▶ She **eats** her lunch at two o'clock.



The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I am playing	I am not playing	Am I playing
He is playing	He isn't playing	Is he playing?
She is playing	She isn't playing	Is she playing ..?
It is playing	It isn't playing	Is it playing
You are playing	You aren't playing	Are you playing ..?
We are playing	We aren't playing	Are we playing?
They are playing	They aren't playing	Are they playing ..?

Form:



(am - is - are) + (v) فعل + ing



يتكون من

- ☐ Adam **is building** a tower on the beach now.

We use it to express an action that's happening now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن ومستمر أثناء الكلام.

- ☐ You **are learning** English now. ☐ Look! She's **climbing** a tree.

We use some words with the present continuous tense such as:

نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع المستمر مثل:

Key words:

- Look انظر Listen استمع now الآن
 at the moment في هذه اللحظة

Term 2

- ☐ I'm reading English **now**.
☐ **Look!** The bird is flying.
☐ **Listen!** She is singing.

Verbs which end in a single (e), omit it before adding (ing).

الأفعال المنتهية بالحرف (e) نحذف الحرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

have → having	write → writing	come → coming
make → making	ride → riding	drive → driving
wave → waving	wake → waking	shine → shining

Verbs which end in a consonant after a vowel, double the last consonant before adding (ing).

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك نطقًا، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

run → running	dig → digging	swim → swimming
put → putting	stop → stopping	cut → cutting

In the negative form, we add (not) after (am - is - are).

عند نفي زمن المضارع المستمر نضيف (not) بعد (am - is - are).

- He isn't wearing a T-shirt now.
- They aren't playing at the moment.

In the interrogative form, we use (am - is - are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v. + ing).

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع المستمر نبدأ السؤال بـ (am - is - are) أو نضع إحداهم بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع (ing + الفعل).

- Are you playing now? ► No, I am not.
- Is Heba helping her mom? ► Yes, she is.
- What are you doing now? ► I'm learning English.
- What's Omar doing? ► He's painting a picture.



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I He She It You We They played	I He She It You We They did not play... didn't play.....	Did I play ? he play ? she play ? it play ? you play ? we play ? they play ?

Form:

التصريف الثاني للفعل

يتكون من

- I could use a computer when I **was** six.
- We **went** to the museum last week.
- He **rode** his bike to the park yesterday.

We use it to express an action that happened in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضي.

- I **visited** my grandparents last weekend.
- They **watched** TV yesterday.

We use some words with the past simple tense such as:

نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

Key words:

- yesterday
- أمس
- in the past
- في الماضي
- ago
- منذ
- last.... (year)
- (العام) الماضي

- My dad built this house ten years **ago**.
- They played football **last** weekend.

In the negative form, we use (didn't) before the bare verb.

عند نفي زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

- Heba **didn't go** to school because she was ill.

In the interrogative form, we use (did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (did) أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

- Did you have your lunch? ► No, I didn't.
- Did she make a cake? ► Yes, she did.
- What did he do in the morning? ► He went to his work.
- What did you do last week? ► I visited my grandmother.



The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → have finished	I → haven't finished	Have → I finished?
He She It } has finished	He She It } hasn't finished	Have Has { he finished? she finished ...? it finished
You We They } have finished	You We They } haven't finished	Have Have { you finished ..? we finished? they finished ..?

Form:

(has - have) + PP

يتكون من

- She has painted a nice picture.
- They have finished their homework.

We use it to talk about past experiences and actions in the past that are still true now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن الخبرات السابقة أو للتعبير عن حدث ماضي مازال له تأثير حتى الآن.

- My dad has mended my bike.
- They have played tennis.

- We also use it with (**never**) to talk about what someone has not done in their life up to now.

نستخدم المضارع التام أيضًا مع (**never**) لنفي خبرة أو تجربة قد يكون تعرض لها الشخص من قبل.

- Have you **ever** seen a tiger? ► No, I've **never** seen a tiger.
○ Has your dad **ever** flown a plane? ► No, he's **never** flown a plane.

- We use some words with the present perfect tense such as:

نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع التام مثل :

Key words:

- | | | | | | |
|-------|--------------------|---------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| ● yet | ليس بعد - حتى الآن | ● just | حالا - تَوَّأ | ● already | بالفعل |
| ● for | لمدة | ● since | منذ | ● ever | دومًا |
| | | ● never | مطلقًا | | |

- She has **already** cooked the food.
○ They have **just** finished their work.

- In the negative form, we either use (**never**) or put (**not**) after (**has - have**).

عند نفي المضارع التام نستخدم كلمة (**never**) أو نضع (**not**) بعد (**has - have**).

- Have you **ever** been abroad? ► No, I've **never** been abroad.
○ My mother **hasn't finished** cooking yet.
○ They **haven't done** their homework.

- In the interrogative form, we use (**has - have**) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the past participle.

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع التام ، نبدأ السؤال بـ (**has - have**) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- What **have** you **done**? ► I've **phoned** my friend.
○ **Has** she **seen** the giraffe? ► Yes, she **has**.
○ **Have** you ever **been** to America? ► No, I've **never been** to America.

Exercises on Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nephew - teenager - cousins - tower - holding

Today we're with our family. We have lots of ①! Amir is 13. He's a ② He's helping his brother Adam. Adam is building a ③ That's a good boy! My ④ Tarek, is a baby. My sister is holding him.

2 Choose the correct answer: (Present Simple - Present Continuous)

1. Today I'm (riding - ride) my bike to the park. SB
2. I usually (help - helped) my parents at the weekend. SB
3. What does she (buy - buying - buys) at the clothes store?
4. My mother is (cooks - cooked - cooking) the food now.
5. He (isn't - don't - doesn't) ride his bike to school.
6. My father always (reads - read - reading) the newspaper in the morning.
7. How does your father (go - goes - going) to work?
8. What is she (do - does - doing) now?
9. I (am not - don't - doesn't) go to school on Saturday.
10. He (work - works - working) in an office.
11. She (talks - is talking - are talking) on the phone at the moment.
12. Look! My friends (is running - are running - run) after each other.
13. What (do - does - doing) Soha do on the weekend?
14. Listen! The birds (sing - is singing - are singing) sweetly.
15. He doesn't (eat - eats - eating) in the class.
16. He's (go - going - goes) to the park now.
17. She (learns - is learning - learn) English at the moment.
18. He doesn't (go - going - goes) out at night.

Unit 7

19. Mr Ahmed (help - helps - helping) students in the class.

20. I don't (read - reads - reading) loudly in the library.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Past Simple - Present Perfect)

1. Last month we (visit - visited) my grandparents. 

2. I've never (climbed - climb) a mountain before. 

3. I (couldn't - can't) use a computer when I was four. 

4. Look, I've (painted - painting) a picture of you! 

5. Mom and I (watched - watches - have watched) TV last night.

6. Has she ever (see - saw - seen) a snake?

7. She (has worked - is worked - works) on this picture since yesterday.

8. Amgad (has helped - helps - helped) his dad last Friday.

9. What (do - did - have) you do yesterday?

10. We (walked - has walked - have walked) to the park last weekend.

11. What did you (do - does - did) on the weekend?

12. (Did - Has - Have) you helped your mom?

13. He didn't (climb - climbed - climbs) the tree yesterday.

14. (Have - Has - Did) he washed his hands?

15. Did Grandma (has - have - had) a farm twenty years ago?

16. Has she (do - did - done) her homework?

17. I've never (swim - swam - swum) in a river.

18. Did they (go - goes - went) to the park last Friday?

19. The children have (read - reads - reading) an interesting story.

20. What did you (wear - wore - worn) yesterday?

4 Read, order, and write:

1. week - the - are - Where - family - this?

.....?

2. are - we - **Today** - our - family - with.

▶

3. uncles - and - cousins - lots of - have - **We!**

▶ !

4. is - building - **Adam** - a - tall - tower.

▶

5. to - walk - **Lama** - is - learning!

▶ !

6. love - **I** - my - family - seeing.

▶

7. **Last** - month - we - my - grandparents - visited.

▶

8. now, - doing - are - you - **What** - Tarek?

▶ ?

9. never - climbed - **I've** - before - a - mountain.

▶

10. last - summer - did - **What** - you - do?

▶ ?

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"What are you and your family doing?"

▶ Ideas to help you:

cook - clean - read

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 3-4-5

Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Science: Identical twins



Phonics: The (ew), (u-e) and (ue) sounds:



(ew)

The letters (ew) make the sound /u:/

jewel
جوهرةnew
جديدflew
طار

(u-e)

The letters (u-e) make the sound /u:/

flute
نايcube
مكعبused to
اعتاد أنJune
شهر يونيو

(ue)

The letters (ue) make the sound /u:/

glue
صمغblue
اللون الأزرقtrue
حقيقي - صحيح



Listen and say



I have a **new** pen.



I **used** to have short hair.



Dad has a **blue** car.



The shop had **new**, **blue** jewels in **June**.



It's **true**! I **used** to play the **flute**.

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



twins

توأم



triplets

ثلاثة توأم



quadruplets

أربعة توأم



siblings

إخوان - أخوات



identical

متماثل - متطابق



non-identical

غير متماثل - غير متطابق



similar

متشابه



different

مختلف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	able to	قادر أن
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	look like	يشبه

Adjectives

good things	أشياء جيدة	too small	صغير جدًا
bad things	أشياء سيئة	amazing game	لعبة مذهشة
curly hair	شعر مجعد	dangerous	خطير
dark hair	شعر أسود	tall x short	طويل x قصير

Phrases & Expressions

are born	يولدوا	maybe	ربما
their bodies	أجسامهم	exactly the same	متماثل تمامًا
a twin brother	أخ توأم	look the same	يبدو متماثلاً

Vocabulary Study



sibling	: a brother or sister
identical	: the same in every way
similar	: having lots of things the same, but not everything
different	: not the same
non-identical	: can be similar to each other or different
twins	: two children or animals born at the same birth
triplets	: three children or animals born at the same birth
quadruplets	: four children or animals born at the same birth

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
look	ينظر - يبدو	looked	looked
work	يعمل	worked	worked
behave	يسلك - يتصرف	behaved	behaved

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
bear	تلد	bore	born
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant
grow	ينمو - يكبر	grew	grown



Read and learn

Identical twins

التوائم المتطابقة

Twins are two **siblings** who are born at the same time. They can be **identical** or **non-identical**. Identical means that they are exactly the same. They look the same, and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers.



التوائم هما شقيقان يولدان في نفس الوقت. يمكن أن يكونوا متطابقين أو غير متطابقين. التطابق يعني إنهم متماثلون تمامًا. أي أنهم يبدوان متطابقين، وأجسادهم تعمل وتنمو بنفس الطريقة. التوائم المتطابقة دائمًا أختين أو أخين.

Non-identical twins can be similar to each other, or they can be very different. They can be two brothers, two sisters, or a sister and a brother. Sometimes they look like each other, and sometimes they don't.

Sometimes people can be **triplets** — three siblings, or even **quadruplets** —



that's four! Twins often think and behave in similar ways. Do you know any twins? What do you think it would be like to be a twin?

يمكن أن يكون التوائم غير المتطابقين متشابهين، أو يمكن أن يكونوا مختلفين تمامًا. يمكن أن يكونوا أخين أو أختين أو أخت وأخ. في بعض الأحيان يشبهون بعضهم البعض، وأحيانًا لا يتشابهون. في بعض الأحيان يمكن أن يكونوا ثلاثة توائم — ثلاثة أشقاء أو حتى أربع توائم! غالبًا ما يفكر التوائم ويتصرفون بطرق متشابهة. هل تعرف أي توائم؟ في رأيك كيف كان سيبدو الأمر لو كنت توائم؟

Tip!

Punctuation

- We use a period (.) at the end of a sentence.

نستخدم النقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة.

▶ Tarek didn't use to speak English.

- We use an exclamation mark (!) at the end of a surprising sentence.

نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة التي تعبر عن الدهشة أو المفاجأة.

▶ That was an amazing game!

- We use a question mark (?) at the end of a question.

نستخدم علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

▶ What do you usually do on weekends?

- We use commas (,) in a list and to connect two sentences.

نستخدم الفاصلة (,) في قائمة وللربط بين جملتين.

▶ I like reading books, watching TV, and playing with my brothers.

Grammar Study



used to

كان معتادًا أن

■ We use (**used to**) to talk about things that happened in the past but they don't happen now, and it's followed by the bare verb.

نستخدم (**used to**) للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن، وتتبع بالفعل في المصدر.

- She **used to have** short hair. Now, she has long hair.
- My dad **used to be able to** wear his white T-shirt, but now it's too small.
- My grandfather **used to play** football when he was young.
- Mr. Ashraf **used to go** to his work by bus. Now, he goes by car.

■ The negative form:

عند النفي نستخدم (**didn't use to**) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.

- He **didn't use to have** a car ten years ago.

■ The interrogative form:

عند الاستفهام (السؤال) نستخدم (**Did - use to**) أو نضع (**did - use to**) بعد كلمة الاستفهام وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.

- **Did** he **use to live** in a large house?
- What **did** you **use to do** when you were five?



Expressing ability & inability

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

لا يستطيع / يستطيع can

■ We use (**can / can't + inf.**) to express ability and inability in the present.

نستخدم (**can / can't + inf.**) للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما في المضارع.

- I **can ride** a bike.
- I **can't make** cakes.

لم يستطع / استطاع could

■ We use (**could / couldn't + inf.**) to express ability and inability in the past.

نستخدم (**could / couldn't + inf.**) للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما في الماضي.

- He **could read** when he was eight.
- He **couldn't use** a computer when he was four.

لاحظ أن:

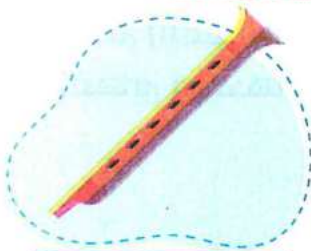
بعد الأفعال (**can / can't / could / couldn't**) يأتي الفعل في المصدر بدون أي إضافات.

Exercises on Lessons 3 4 5

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



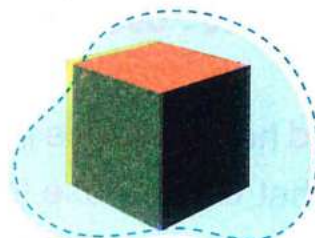
نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.



fl _ t _



j _ _ el



c _ b _



bl _ _



gl _ _



tr _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

born - quadruplets - triplets - Twins - siblings

Do you know what twins are? Twins are two ① who are born at the same time. ② often think and behave in similar ways. They can be identical or non-identical. Sometimes people can be ③ — three siblings, or even ④ — that's four!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

happy - skateboard - used - wears - unhappy

Amr is twelve years old. He used to be ① because he couldn't see well. Now Amr is ② He ③ glasses. He didn't use to be able to ④ Now he can skateboard.

4 Choose the correct answer: (used to) (can - could)

1. He (uses - used - is using) to ride a bike. Now, he's walking.
2. She used (at - to - for) go to school by bus. Now, she goes by bike.
3. Mona used to (has - have - had) short hair when she was young.
4. They used to (live - lives - lived) in a flat. Now, they live in a house.
5. I (don't - didn't - haven't) use to be able to ride a bike, but now I can.
6. He used to (play - plays - playing) the piano. Now, he plays the flute.
7. He didn't (use - used - using) to watch cartoons when he was young.
8. She used to (wears - wore - wear) blouses. Now, she wears dresses.
9. We used to (has - have - had) small shops. Now, we have big malls.
10. She didn't (use - used - using) to help her mom in the kitchen.
11. I (couldn't - can't) use a computer when I was four. SB
12. I didn't use to be able to cook, but now I (can - could - couldn't) make a cake.
13. I (can - couldn't - can't) do math when I was a toddler.

5 Look, write and say:



blue - cube - flew - flute - glue
jewel - June - new - true - used to

(ew)	(u-e)	(ue)
flew	cube	blue
.....		
.....		
.....		

6 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. They can be identical or non-identical. Identical means that they are exactly the same. They look the same, and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers. Non-identical twins can be similar to each other, or they can be very different. They can be two brothers, two sisters, or a sister and a brother. Sometimes they look like each other, and sometimes they don't. Sometimes people can be triplets – three siblings, or even quadruplets – that's four! Twins often think and behave in similar ways.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Twins are two siblings who are born at (different - the same - similar) time.
- Triplets means (one sibling - two siblings - three siblings).

B Answer these questions:

- What does identical mean?

.....

- What does non-identical mean?

.....

5. How many brothers and sisters are there if they are quadruplets?

6. What do twins often do?

7 Read, order, and write:

1. school - at - glasses - wear - Malak - Does?

2. to - used - I - short - hair - have.

3. any - twins - you - Do - know?

4. play - used - to - I - flute - the.

5. dark - Younis - Does - curly - hair - have?

6. siblings - two - are - Twins.

7. Does - dark - hair - have - Malak?

8. is - How - tall - Younis?

8 Write the correct punctuation (. - ? - ! - ,):



Student's
Book

1. What do you usually do on weekends

2. Stop That road is dangerous

3. Tarek didn't use to speak English

4. I like reading books watching TV and playing with my brothers

5. Did Dad use to walk to school

6. That was an amazing game

7. I used to have long hair but now my hair is short

9 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"What your little brother used and didn't use to do"

► Ideas to help you:

talk - walk - read

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 6 Animal families & Adaptation in animals

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**litter**

حيوانات صغيرة إخوة

**newborn**

حديث الولادة

**offspring**

نسل - ذرية

**predators**

حيوانات مفترسة

**living organisms**

كائنات حية

**species**

فصائل - أنواع

**environment**

بيئة



Black

White

traits

صفات



Fast

Slow

characteristics

سمات - خصائص

**inherit**

يرث

Long ears help a rabbit to survive.

**survive (v)**

يبقى على قيد الحياة

**survival (n)**

البقاء على قيد الحياة

**adapt to (v)**

يتكيف مع

**adaptation (n)**

تكيف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Habitats

بيئات - مواطن طبيعية

grassland

أرض عُشبية

polar

منطقة قطبية

wetland

أرض رطبة (مبتلة)

desert

صحراء

Animals

lizard

سحلية

addax antelope

ظبي (ذو قرون طويلة ملتوية)

polar bear

الدب القطبي

finch

عصفور الثلوج

cuttlefish

حبار

penguin

بطريق

Prepositions

similar to

مشابه لـ

live for longer

يعيش لمدة أطول

come from

يأتي من

hide from

يختبئ من - يختفي من

adapt to

يتكيف مع

a mix of

مزيج من

layer of fat

طبقة من الدهن

over time

بمرور الوقت

Adjectives

natural world

بيئة طبيعية

safer

أكثر أماناً

living creature

كائن حي

healthier

أكثر صحة

special

مميز - خاص

hard

صعب

long beak

منقار طويل

cold climate

مناخ بارد

key characteristic

سمة أساسية

hot weather

طقس حار

Other words

camouflaged fur	فرو للتمويه	surroundings	الأشياء المحيطة
horns	قرون الحيوان	leaf	ورقة شجر
heat (n)	حرارة	seeds	بذور
mix (n)	خليط - مزيج	sound	صوت شيء
long ears	أذنان طويلتان	soon	بعد وقت قصير - قريبًا

Vocabulary Study **SB** Student's Book

to adapt	: to change to suit your environment
trait	: a key characteristic that an organism has, e.g. camouflaged fur or a long beak
to inherit	: to get characteristics from your parents
litter	: a number of baby animals born from the same parents at the same time
newborn	: a baby animal that has just been born
offspring	: a person's child, or an animal's or plant's baby
organism	: a living thing, all animals and plants
species	: a group of animals or plants that are very similar and share the same characteristics
survival	: staying alive. In the natural world, this can be hard for many plants and animals.
characteristics	: special traits that make an organism special or different from others

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
inherit يرث	inherited	inherited
adapt يتكيف	adapted	adapted
hunt يصطاد (حيوانات)	hunted	hunted
stay cool يظل باردًا	stayed cool	stayed cool
stay alive يبقى على قيد الحياة	stayed alive	stayed alive
suit يناسب - يلائم	suited	suited
pass يمرر - يناول	passed	passed
develop ينتج - يطور	developed	developed
reflect يعكس	reflected	reflected
look like يشبه	looked like	looked like
survive يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived
move يحرك - يتحرك	moved	moved
share يشارك - يتشارك	shared	shared
change color يغير اللون	changed color	changed color

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
get older يكبر	got older	got older
come from يأتي من	came from	come from
keep warm يبقى دافئًا	kept warm	kept warm
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
become يصبح	became	become
catch يمسك - يصطاد	caught	caught
hear well يسمع جيدًا	heard well	heard well
hide يختبئ - يختفي	hid	hidden



Read and learn

Animal families عائلات الحيوانات



Look at this **litter** of **newborn** rabbits. They look very different from their parents! But soon their eyes will open and their fur will grow. As they get older, the rabbits in a litter will look similar to each other, but not identical.



Litter

The **offspring** have **inherited** some **traits**

from their mother and some traits from their father. They may have the same fur color as their mother, or their father — or a mix of the two.

انظر إلى هذه المجموعة من الأرانب حديثي الولادة. يبدوون مختلفين جدًا عن والديهم! لكن سرعان ما ستفتح عيونهم وينمو فرائهم. عندما يكبرون، ستبدو الأرانب الصغيرة في المجموعة متشابهة مع بعضها البعض، لكنها ليست متطابقة. يرث النسل بعض السمات من والديهم وبعض السمات من والدهم. قد يكون لديهم نفس لون الفراء مثل والديهم - أو والدهم - أو مزيج من الإثنين.

Soon their ears will start to grow, too. Having long ears is a key **characteristic** of a rabbit. Why do rabbits have long ears? Rabbits have lots of **predators** — bigger animals that hunt and eat them. The long ears help rabbits to hear well. Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming



Parents

from. The long ears also help the rabbit stay cool in hot weather, or keep warm in cold weather. So, long ears are very important for a rabbit's **survival**. Over time, rabbits with longer ears become safer and healthier. They could live for longer and have more litters. They passed this trait to their offspring, and rabbits **adapted** to have long ears.

لاحقًا ستبدأ آذان الأرانب في النمو، أيضًا. امتلاك آذان طويلة هي السمة الرئيسية للأرنب. لماذا تمتلك الأرانب آذان طويلة؟ الأرانب لديها الكثير من الحيوانات المفترسة - الحيوانات

الكبيرة التي تصطادها وتأكلها. تساعد الآذان الطويلة الأرانب على السمع جيدًا. يمكن أن تتحرك آذانهم لذلك يعرف الأرنب مصدر الصوت. تساعد الآذان الطويلة الأرنب أيضًا على البقاء باردًا في الطقس الحار والتدفئة في الطقس البارد. لذلك، الآذان الطويلة مهمة جدًا لبقاء الأرنب على قيد الحياة. بمرور الوقت، تصبح الأرانب ذات الأذنين الأطول أكثر أمانًا وأكثر صحة. يمكن أن يعيشوا لفترة أطول ويصبح لديهم المزيد من الصغار. لقد نقلوا هذه السمة إلى ذريتهم، والأرانب تكيفت على أن تكون لها آذان طويلة.

All **organisms** have to adapt to their environment. All **species** of animals and plants have their own characteristics and behave in ways that help them to survive.

يجب أن تتكيف جميع الكائنات الحية مع بيئتها. جميع فصائل الحيوانات والنباتات لها خصائصها الخاصة وتتصرف بطرق تساعد على البقاء على قيد الحياة.



Adaptation in animals

التكيف في الحيوانات

1



polar bear

This animal has developed a layer of fat to keep it warm in cold climates.

أنتج هذا الحيوان طبقة من الدهون لإبقائه دافئًا في المناخ البارد.

This animal has adapted to look like a leaf, so other animals don't eat it.

هذا الحيوان تكيف ليبدو مثل ورقة الشجرة، لكي لا تأكله الحيوانات الأخرى.



lizard

3



finch

This bird has a large beak so it can eat lots of different seeds.

هذا الطائر له منقار كبير لذلك يمكنه أن يأكل الكثير من البذور المختلفة.

This animal has long horns. It is white in summer to reflect heat, and gray in winter to keep warm.

هذا الحيوان له قرون طويلة. يكون لونه أبيض في الصيف ليعكس الحرارة، ولونه رمادي في الشتاء ليبقى دافئاً.



**addax
antelope**

5



penguin

This bird can swim a long way underwater to catch fish.

يمكن لهذا الطائر السباحة لمسافة طويلة تحت الماء لصيد الأسماك.

This sea animal can change color with its surroundings, so it can hide from predators and catch food.

يستطيع هذا الحيوان البحري أن يغير لونه مع محيطه، لذلك يستطيع أن يختبئ من الحيوانات المفترسة ويصطاد الطعام.



cuttlefish

Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

survive - organisms - adapted - change - characteristics

There are different environments in our world. All ① have to adapt to their environment. All species of animals and plants have their own ② and behave in ways that help them to ③ Rabbits adapted to have long ears. Some insects have ④ to look like a leaf, so other animals don't eat it.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fur - live - litter - traits - inherit

This is a litter of newborn rabbits. The offspring ① some traits from their mother and some ② from their father. They may have the same ③ color as their mother, or their father — or a mix of the two. Rabbits with longer ears could live for longer and have more ④ They pass this trait to their offspring, and rabbits adapted to have long ears.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Having long ears is a key characteristic of a rabbit. Rabbits have lots of predators — bigger animals that hunt and eat them. The long ears help rabbits to hear well. Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming from. The long ears also help the rabbit stay cool in hot weather, or keep warm in cold weather. So, long ears are very important for a rabbit's survival. Over time, rabbits with longer ears become safer and healthier. They could live for longer and have more litter. They pass this trait to their offspring, and rabbits adapt to have long ears.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Having long (legs - ears - noses) is a key characteristic of a rabbit.
2. Rabbits have lots of (predators - friends - cousins).

B Answer these questions:

3. How can the long ears help rabbits to hear well?



4. What do rabbits pass to their offspring?



5. What does the underlined word "predators" mean?



6. What happens to rabbits with longer ears over time?

**4** Read, order, and write:Activity
Book

1. their parents - Offspring - from - some traits - inherit.



2. to have - ears - Rabbits - long - have adapted.



3. adapt - to their - organisms - environment - All - have to.



4. characteristics - All - of - animals - have - species - their own.



Lesson 7



Part 1 Science: Reproduction in plants

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



reproduce (v)

يتكاثر



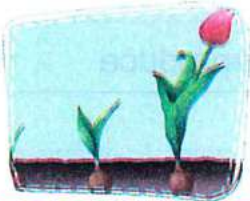
reproduction (n)

تكاثر



pollen grains

حبوب لقاح



bulbs

بصيلات النبات



seeds

بذور



cell

خلية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

flowering plants

نباتات مزهرة

living organisms

كائنات حية

parent plants

النباتات الأم

wind

رياح

habitat

موطن طبيعي

the same type

نفس النوع

shape

شكل

differences

اختلافات

height

ارتفاع

stem structure

الهيكل الجذعي للنبات

insects

حشرات

identical copy

نسخة متطابقة

the smallest part

الجزء الأصغر

underground

تحت الأرض

Prepositions

fall to the ground	تسقط على الأرض	on their own	بمفردهم
grow into	تنمو إلى	under the ground	تحت الأرض
inherit from	يرث من	around the world	حول العالم
pass on	ينقل إلى - يمرر إلى	carried by	تُحمل بواسطة

Vocabulary Study

reproduce	: have offspring
seed	: this is produced when the pollen grains mix with cells in a new plant
bulb	: this stays underground and grows into a plant
cell	: the smallest part of an organism
pollen grains	: very small structures that plants use to reproduce

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
flower	تُزهَر	flowered	flowered
mix	يختلط - يمتزج	mixed	mixed
pass	يُمرَّر - ينتقل	passed	passed
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
produce	يُنتِج	produced	produced
reproduce	يتكاثر	reproduced	reproduced
include	يشتمل على	included	included

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
fall	يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
take	يأخذ	took	taken
grow	تنمو - تكبُر	grew	grown



Read and learn



Do all plants produce offspring in the same way?

هل تنتج جميع النباتات ذرية بنفس الطريقة؟

We know that animals have offspring, and adapt to their habitat. We can see the same in plants around the world, too. Plants are living organisms, and they also **reproduce** and adapt. Like animals, they pass on traits to their offspring.



The inherited traits that plants pass on to offspring include the color of the flower, the shape of the flower, the shape of the leaf, and the height of the plant, etc.



نعلم أن الحيوانات لديها ذرية، وتتكيف مع بيئتها. يمكننا أن نرى نفس الشيء في النباتات حول العالم، أيضًا. النباتات كائنات حية، وهي تتكاثر وتتكيف، وينقلون الصفات إلى ذريتهم مثل الحيوانات.



السمات الموروثة التي تنقلها النباتات إلى النسل تشمل لون الزهرة، شكل الزهرة وشكل الورقة وارتفاع النبات.

Plants reproduce in two ways. Most plants are flowering plants. The flowers produce **pollen grains** – very small structures. These are carried by insects, birds or the wind to other plants. When they are taken to another plant of the same type, the pollen grains mix with cells in the new plant to make **seeds**. When these seeds fall to the ground, they can grow into a new plant. This new plant will inherit traits from both the parent plants. It will be the same type, but it might have small differences.

تتكاثر النباتات بطريقتين. معظم النباتات هي نباتات مُزهرة. تنتج الأزهار حبوب اللقاح - هياكل صغيرة جدًا، وتُحْمَل بواسطة الحشرات والطيور أو الرياح إلى نباتات أخرى. عندما تنتقل إلى نبات آخر من نفس النوع، تختلط حبوب اللقاح مع الخلايا الموجودة في النبات الجديد لتنتج البذور. عندما تسقط هذه البذور على الأرض، يمكن أن تنمو لتصبح نباتًا جديدًا. سوف يرث هذا النبات الجديد سمات من كلا النباتين الأبوين. سيكون من نفس النوع، ولكن قد يكون هناك اختلافات طفيفة.

Other plants reproduce on their own by producing an identical copy of themselves. These plants can produce **bulbs** which grow under the ground. The offspring plant only inherits traits from one parent plant, and it will have the same characteristics in leaf shape and stem structure as the parent plant.



seeds



bulbs

تتكاثر النباتات الأخرى من تلقاء نفسها عن طريق إنتاج نسخة متطابقة منها. يمكن أن تنتج هذه النباتات البصيلات التي تنمو تحت الأرض. ترث النبتة الصفات من نبات أم واحد فقط وسيكون له نفس الخصائص في شكل الورقة والهيكـل الجذعي مثل النبات الأم.

Exercises on Lesson 7 Part 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

birds - pollen - reproduce - insects - cells

Plants are living organisms. Plants ① in two ways. Most plants are flowering plants. The flowers produce ② grains — very small structures. This is carried by ③, birds or the wind to other plants. When it is taken to another plant of the same type, the pollen grains mix with ④ in the new plant to make seeds.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

differences - plants - parent - seeds - grains

Plants reproduce in two ways. When pollen ① mix with cells in a new plant, they make seeds. When these ② fall to the ground, they can grow into a new plant. This new plant will inherit traits from both the ③ plants. It will be the same type, but it might have small ④

3 Read, order, and write:

1. have - all - plants - **Do** - flowers?

▶ ?

2. organisms - living - are - **Plants**.

▶

3. produce - **The** - flowers - grains - pollen.

▶

4. seeds - make - plants - do - **How**?

▶ ?

5. adapt - **Plants** - and - reproduce.

▶

6. are - **Most** - plants - flowering.

▶

7. pollen - **How** - grains - do - travel?

▶ ?

8. ways - do - **How many** - reproduce - plants - in?

▶ ?

Lesson 7



Part 2

Science: Adaptation in plants

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



rainforest plants

نباتات استوائية



desert plants

نباتات صحراوية



water plants

نباتات مائية



water lily

نبات زنبق الماء



wild plants

نباتات برية



pitcher plants

نباتات الأباريق



drip tip leaves

أوراق طرف التنقيط



cactus plant

نبات الصبار



strong roots

جذور قوية



date palm

نخيل التمر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

variety

تعدد - تنوع

wide

واسع - عريض

surface of the water

سطح الماء

flat leaves

أوراق مسطحة (مستوية)

deep roots

جذور عميقة

pond

بركة - بحيرة

rain (n)	مطر	give shade	تعطي ظل
hole	فتحة	bright colors	ألوان براقية
incredible	لا يصدق	stem	ساق - جذع

Prepositions

on Earth	على كوكب الأرض	for support	للمساندة - للدعم
at the top	على القمة	get out	يُخرج
above the ground	فوق الأرض	fall off	يسقط من أعلى
turn into	يتحول إلى	fall into	يسقط في

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

rainforest plants	: plants that grow in dense forests with heavy rainfall
desert plants	: plants that grow in very hot areas covered with sand
water plants	: plants that grow in water
wild plants	: plants that grow naturally
pitcher plants	: a plant with a deep pitcher-shaped pouch that contains fluid into which insects are attracted and trapped. The plant then absorbs nutrients from their bodies
drip tip leaves	: leaves with a slope to let rainwater fall off
roots	: the part of a plant which attaches it to the ground or a support, typically underground
date palm	: a kind of tree that produces dates
hole	: a hollow place in a solid body or surface
surface	: the outside part or layer of something
shade	: darkness and coolness caused by shelter from direct sunlight

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
attract	يجذب	attracted	attracted
turn into	يتحول إلى	turned into	turned into
protect	يحمي	protected	protected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
break	ينكسر	broke	broken
give	يعطي	gave	given
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
get water	تحصل على الماء	got water	got water



Read and learn



Which plant has adapted to eat insects?

أي نبات تكيف أن يأكل الحشرات؟

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are tall trees in the rainforest, cactus plants in the desert, water lilies in ponds, and many wild plants and flowers that we see every day around us. They are all different, and they adapt to their environment in amazing ways.

يوجد تنوع مذهل من النباتات على الأرض. توجد أشجار طويلة في الغابات المطيرة، ونباتات الصبار في الصحراء، وزنابق الماء في البرك، ونباتات وأزهار برية نراها كل يوم حولنا. كلهم مختلفون ويتأقلمون مع بيئتهم بطرق مذهلة.

Rainforest plants

نباتات استوائية



Rain falls off this shape of leaf quickly. The leaf stays strong even if there is a lot of rain.

يسقط المطر بسرعة على هذا الشكل من ورق الشجر. تظل الورقة قوية حتى إن كان هناك مطرًا كثيرًا.

Drip tip leaves

These plants use bright colors to attract insects. The insects fall into the hole of the plant and they can't get out. The plant can turn the insect into food!

تستخدم هذه النباتات الألوان الباقة لجذب الحشرات. تسقط الحشرات في حفرة النبات ولا يمكنها الخروج. يمكن للنبات أن يحول الحشرة إلى غذاء!



Pitcher plants



Strong roots

Rainforest trees are very tall, but these wide roots sit above the ground and make the tree strong.

أشجار الغابات المطيرة طويلة جدًا. ولكن هذه الجذور العريضة تنمو فوق الأرض وتجعل الشجرة قوية.

Water plants نباتات مائية



Water lily

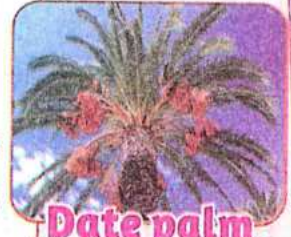
The water lily has flat leaves to stay on the surface of the water, and a long stem under the water that doesn't break.

لدى زنبق الماء أوراق مسطحة ليبقى على سطح الماء، وجذع طويل تحت الماء لا ينكسر.

Desert plants نباتات صحراوية

The date palm has deep roots to get water from underground, and big leaves at the top to give shade to the rest of the tree.

نخيل التمر لديه جذورًا عميقة للحصول على الماء من باطن الأرض، وأوراق كبيرة في الأعلى لإعطاء الظل لبقية الشجرة.



Date palm

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rainforest - desert - wild - Earth - ponds

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are tall trees in the ① _____, cactus plants in the ② _____, water lilies in ③ _____, and many ④ _____ plants and flowers that we see every day around us. They are all different, and they adapt to their environment in amazing ways.

2 Read, order, and write:

1. grow - these - plants - do - Where?

▶ ?

2. Rainforest - trees - tall - very - are.

▶

3. has - The - water - lily - leaves - flat.

▶

4. roots - deep - has - The - date - palm.

▶

5. underground - water - from - gets - palm - The - date.

▶

6. water - on - has - A - water lily - leaves.

▶

7. adapted to - How - the - lily - has - water?

▶ ?

Unit 7 Test 1

Total

30



(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



n _ _



j _ n _



bl _ _



fl _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

ears - survival - characteristic - important - predators

Here is some information about rabbits. Having long ears is a key **1** of a rabbit. "Rabbits have lots of **2** — bigger animals that hunt and eat them. The long **3** help rabbits to hear well. Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming from. So, long ears are very important for a rabbit's **4** .

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are tall trees in the rainforest, cactus plants in the desert, water lilies in ponds, and many wild plants and flowers that we see every day around us. They are all **different**, and they adapt to their environment in amazing ways.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are tall trees in the (water - desert - rainforest).
2. Plants (adapt - catch - look after) to their environment.

B Answer these questions:

3. What plants are there in the desert?

4. Where do lilies grow? ▶
5. What is the opposite of the underlined word "different"? ▶
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma was reading ○
2. There was a competition ○

(B)

- ☐ a) for the best invention.
- ☐ b) the school newsletter.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Nesma knew that she wanted to make a toy. ()
4. Nesma's dad showed her a box of his drawings and plans. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. Mom didn't (make - makes - made) a cake last Friday.
2. I usually (looking - looked - look) after my baby brother.
3. He has (uses - using - used) lots of his notebooks.
4. She used to (go - goes - went) to El-Horria School last year.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. have - do - rabbits - Why - long - ears? ▶ ?
2. the - insect - turns - The plant - into - food. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"What you used and didn't use to do when you were young"

▶ Ideas to help you: - play tennis - visit friends - help mom

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Theme (3)
How the world works

Unit 8

At the museum

في المتحف



Objectives

Vocabulary	Art: ancient, modern, artifact, tool, clay, sculpture, portrait, tomb, jewelry, necklace, bracelet, geometric pattern Making art: abstract, fine, realistic, shade, sketch, three-dimensional, tone
Language	- How much clay is there? - There is a lot of clay. - How many bracelets are there? - There aren't any bracelets.
Reading	A text about art in ancient Egypt A text about art in modern Egypt
Phonics	-ture : sculpture, sea creature -sure: treasure, measure
Life skills	Participation / Communication
Values	Cooperation / Curiosity / Respect / Independence
Issues and challenges	Community participation Loyalty and belonging
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	Art: Shading Math: Geometric patterns

Lessons 1-2 At the museum & Language use

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



artifacts

تَحَف



portrait

صورة فنية للوجه



clay

طين صلب



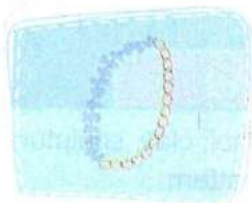
sculpture

تمثال منحوت



jewelry

مجوهرات



bracelet

إسورة



necklace

عقد - قلادة



tools

أدوات - عدة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

bowl	سلطانية	wood	خشب
cup	فنجان	statue	تمثال
book	كتاب	cloth	قماش
paper	ورق	metal	معدن
wrist	معصم اليد	pot	إناء - وعاء
plate	طبق	decoration	زخرفة
jug	إبريق	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
precious	ثمين - نفيس	natural	طبيعي

museum	متحف	There is	يوجد (للمفرد)
room	حجرة	There are	يوجد (للمجمع)
interesting	شيق - ممتع	enough	كافي
beautiful	جميل	person	شخص
beige	اللون البيج	today	اليوم

Vocabulary Study

bracelet	: You wear this around your wrist.
sculpture	: It is made of stone and it might look like a person or an animal.
necklace	: You wear this around your neck.
clay	: A natural material you use to make pots, plates, jugs or statues.
artifacts	: Lots of different things you might see in a museum.
tool	: You use this to make things or to fix things.
portrait	: A painting, drawing or photograph of a person.
jewelry	: Beautiful objects made of precious metals that we wear as decorations on ourselves.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
visit	يزور	visited	visited
look like	يشبه	looked like	looked like
count	يعد - يحسب	counted	counted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
see	يرى	saw	seen
say	يقول	said	said
go	يذهب	went	gone
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
make	يصنع	made	made
get	يحصل على	got	got
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



Read and learn

How many statues are there?



There are so many statues.

يوجد العديد من التماثيل.

1

Today we're at the museum.
There are lots of things to see.

نحن اليوم في المتحف. هناك
العديد من الأشياء لنراها.

3

After the jewelry, we'll see
some tools and clay artifacts.

بعد المجوهرات، سوف نرى بعض
الأدوات والتحف المصنوعة من طين
المصلال.

2

Miss Mona says we will visit a
room with lots of jewelry first.

تقول الأستاذة منى أننا سوف نزور
حجرة بها العديد من المجوهرات أولاً.

4

We have our pens and pencils to
draw some of the things we see.
It's very interesting!

معنا أقلامنا الجاف والريصاص لرسم بعض
من الأشياء التي نراها. إنه أمر شيق جداً!



Guess the artifact!

خمن القطعة الأثرية!



1

I went to the museum and I saw an artifact. It was big. It was made of clay.
ذهبت إلى المتحف ورأيت أحد التحف.
كانت كبيرة ومصنوعة من طين الصلصال.

3

No. It looked like a person.
لا. لقد كانت تبدو كشخص.

2

Was it a tool?
هل كانت أداة؟

4

Was it a sculpture?
هل كان تمثالاً منحوتاً؟

5

Yes, it was!
نعم، لقد كان كذلك!

Grammar Study



Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد

- Nouns are divided into (**countable nouns**) and (**uncountable nouns**).
تنقسم الأسماء إلى أسماء تُعد (تُجمع) وأسماء لا تُعد (لا تُجمع).
- Most nouns are countable and have singular and plural forms.
معظم الأسماء تعد ولها صيغة مفرد وصيغة جمع.

boy → boys	watch → watches	knife → knives
story → stories	brush → brushes	man → men
tomato → tomatoes	dress → dresses	mouse → mice

- There are other nouns which are uncountable. They do not have a plural form.

بعض الأسماء الأخرى هي أسماء لا تُعد وهي التي ليس لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

wood - water - cloth - metal - paper - clay - cheese - bread - butter - rice - milk - juice - meat - sugar - salt

كلمة (metal) يمكن أن تستخدم كاسم يُعد، وأيضا يمكن أن تستخدم كاسم لا يُعد.

■ **Uncountable nouns always take a singular verb while the countable nouns take a plural verb if they are plural.**

الأسماء التي لا تُعد دائما تعامل معاملة المفرد بينما الأسماء التي تُعد تعامل معاملة الجمع.

- There **is** some **clay**.
- There **are** some **portraits**.
- **Is** there any **water**? ► Yes, there is.
- **Are** there any **bowls**? ► No, there aren't.

How many كم عدد

○ تتبع باسم جمع (يُعد)

- How many **bracelets** are there? ► There are six bracelets.
- How many **books** are there? ► There aren't any books.

How much كم كمية

○ تتبع باسم لا يُعد

- How much **wood** is there? ► There is a lot of wood.
- How much **paper** is there? ► There isn't any paper.

a lot of - lots of الكثير من

○ يمكن أن يتبعا باسم يُعد أو اسم لا يُعد

- There is **a lot of** **cloth**.
- There are **lots of** **rulers**.

some بعض

○ يمكن أن تتبع باسم يُعد أو اسم لا يُعد وتستخدم في الجمل المثبتة

- There **is** **some** **juice**.
- There **are** **some** **pens**.

any أي

○ يمكن أن تتبع باسم يُعد أو اسم لا يُعد وتستخدم في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية (السؤال).

- There **isn't** **any** **clay**.
- There **aren't** **any** **pictures**.
- **Is** there **any** **water**?
- **Are** there **any** **statues**?

○ لا تنسى أن الأسماء التي لا تُعد، دائما تعامل معاملة المفرد.

Exercises on Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pencils - clay - jewelry - museum - artifact

There is a school trip today. The children are at the ①
The children's teacher, Miss Mona, is with them. Miss Mona wants
to look at some ② first. After that, they'll see some tools.
Then they'll see some ③ artifacts. The children have pens
and ④ to draw different things.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):



(A)	(B)
1. How many bracelets are there?	a) There are two sculptures.
2. How much clay is there?	b) There isn't a lot of water.
3. How much wood is there?	c) There are six bracelets.
4. How many sculptures are there?	d) There is a lot of clay.
5. How much water is there?	e) There isn't any wood.
6. How many books are there?	f) There aren't any books.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- There (am - is - are) some water in the bottle.
- There (am - is - are) some pens on the desk.
- There is a lot of (rulers - books - paper) on the table.
- There are lots of (cups - bed - statue) in the kitchen.
- How (many - old - much) pencils are there?
- How (many - much - tall) wood is there?

Unit 8

7. How many (juice - water - bowls) are there?
8. How much (books - paper - bags) is there?
9. How many bracelets (am - is - are) there?
10. How much metal (am - is - are) there?
11. There (am not - isn't - aren't) enough water.
12. I can see three (cup - beds - bowl).
13. (Am - Is - Are) there wood in the room?
14. (Am - Is - Are) there sculptures in the museum?
15. Is there (cloth - tools - bowls) in the shop?
16. Are there (board - table - chairs) in the classroom?
17. There are (some - a - any) bracelets.
18. There isn't (some - any - an) clay.
19. There (are - aren't - isn't) any portraits.
20. There (is - are - isn't) some cloth.

4 Choose the correct answer:



1. He's making two (cup - cups).
2. I've got some (paper - papers) for my project.
3. We need some (wood - woods) to make a toy plane.
4. There are some (bowl - bowls) on the table.
5. Would you like some (water - waters)?
6. Are there four (chair - chairs) in the kitchen?
7. We need some (clay - clays) for this project.

5 Read, order, and write:

1. we - 're - Today - the - museum - at.

▶ ?

2. some - like - you - Would - water?

▶ ?

3. like - looked - **A** - sculpture - a person.



4. are - **There** - portraits - many.



5. there - is - paper - much - **How**?



?

6. isn't - **There** - paper - enough.



7. clay - made - of - was - **The** - sculpture.



8. any - aren't - **There** - books.



9. bracelets - many - are - **How** - there?



?

10. bracelet - of - made - **This** - wood - is.



6 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"A trip to the museum"

► Ideas to help you: **last month - bus - teacher**



Lessons 3-4 Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Values



Phonics: The (-ture) and (-sure) sounds:

(-ture)

The letters (-ture) make the sound /tʃər/



adventure
مغامرة

sea creature
مخلوق بحري

(-sure)

The letters (-sure) make the sound /ʒər/



treasure
كنز

pleasure
سعادة - سرور



Listen and say



Let's go on an **adventure**.
Yes, with **pleasure**!
In the museum, we will
find some **treasure**.
Stop!
What's that **creature**?
It's OK. It's a **sculpture**.





Tip!

Apostrophe (')

Apostrophe (')

- We use an apostrophe when there is a letter missing in a word.

نستخدم الفاصلة العلوية عندما يكون هناك حرف ناقص في الكلمة.

- ▶ I **don't** like drinking coffee.
- ▶ I **do not** like drinking coffee.

- We also use an apostrophe to show that something belongs to someone.

نستخدم الفاصلة العلوية أيضًا لنبين أن شيء ما ينتمي لشخص ما.

- ▶ That is **Amr's** bag.

Notice: If something belongs to two or more people, the apostrophe is after the (s).

لاحظ أن: إذا كان شيء ينتمي إلى شخصين أو أكثر أو اسم جمع متوحد بحرف (s)، توضع الفاصلة العلوية بعد حرف (s).

- ▶ My **grandparents'** apartment is near the beach.

Abbreviations

الاختصارات

I am	I'm
He is	He's
I have	I've
are not	aren't
will not	won't
What is	What's
Where is	Where's

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

images	صور	culture	ثقافة
website	موقع إلكتروني	models	نماذج
link	رابط	behavior	سلوك
more time	وقت أكثر	mistakes	أخطاء
busy	مزدحم	what interests you	ما يثير اهتمامك

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

treasure	: a quantity of precious metals, gems, or other valuable objects
adventure	: an unusual and exciting experience or activity
measure	: estimate the size, extent, quality, value, or effect of (something)
pleasure	: a feeling of happy satisfaction and enjoyment
sea creature	: an organism that lives in the sea
image	: a representation of the external form of a person or thing in art
mistakes	: actions or judgments that are misguided or wrong
culture	: the customs, arts, social institutions, and achievements of a particular nation, people, or other social group
busy	: full of people, crowded

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
follow يتبع - يتابع	followed	followed
prefer يفضل	preferred	preferred
measure يقيس	measured	measured
learn about يتعلم عن	learned (learnt) about	learned (learnt) about

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
find يجد	found	found
show يعرض - يبين	showed	shown
understand يفهم	understood	understood
make يصنع - يجعل	made	made
read يقرأ	read	read
teach يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught	taught



Activity



Which answers do you agree with? You can tick more than one.
ما هي الإجابات التي تتفق معها؟ يمكنك وضع علامة على أكثر من إجابة.

Do you like learning about the past?

هل تحب أن تتعلم عن الماضي؟

a No, I don't. I prefer to learn about things people make and do now. ☐

لا أحب ذلك. أنا أفضل أن أتعلم أشياء يصنعها أشخاص ويقوموا بفعلها في الوقت الحاضر.

b Yes, I do. I think artifacts and tools from the past are very interesting. ☐

نعم أنا أحب ذلك. أعتقد أن التعلم عن التحف الفنية والأدوات في الماضي شيق جدًا.

c It's OK. Some of the things you can see in museums are interesting, but others aren't. ☐

لا بأس. بعض الأشياء التي يمكن أن تراها في المتاحف تكون شيقة ولكن البعض الآخر ليس كذلك.

How do you like to learn?

كيف تحب أن تتعلم؟

a I like seeing things in museums. You can really understand what things were like in the past when you can see them.
أحب رؤية الأشياء في المتاحف. تستطيع حقًا أن تفهم كيف كانت الأشياء تبدو في الماضي عندما تراهم.

b I prefer looking at things in books to visiting museums. I like having more time to read things at home, and museums can be busy.
أنا أفضل رؤية الأشياء في الكتب عن زيارة المتاحف. أحب أن يكون لدي وقت أكثر لأقرأ عن الأشياء في المنزل، ومن الممكن أن تكون المتاحف مزدحمة.

I like looking at websites because the images are interesting and you can follow links to see what interests you.

- c أنا أحب النظر إلى المواقع الإلكترونية لأن الصور تكون ممتعة ويمكنك أن تتابع روابط لترى ما يجذب اهتمامك.

Why do we learn about the past?

لماذا نتعلم عن الماضي؟

Learning about the past shows us models of good behavior and

- a teaches us to learn from the mistakes of others. ☐

يُظهر لنا التعلم عن الماضي نماذج للسلوك الجيد ويعلمنا أن نتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين.

Learning about the past helps us understand the things people

- b do and say now. ☐

يساعدنا التعلم عن الماضي في فهم الأشياء التي يفعلها الأشخاص ويقولونها الآن.

- c We can learn more about our culture by understanding our past. ☐

نستطيع أن نتعلم أكثر عن ثقافتنا بفهم ماضينا.

Discuss your answers with a friend. ناقش إجاباتك مع صديق.

I love learning about artifacts from the past.

أحب التعلم عن التُّحف (الآثار) من الماضي.



I don't. I think the things we make and do now are much more interesting.

أنا لا أحب ذلك. أعتقد أن ما نصنعه ونقوم به الآن أكثر تشويقًا.



Exercises on Lessons 3 4

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.



sea crea _ _ _ _



adven _ _ _ _



mea _ _ _ _



trea _ _ _ _



plea _ _ _ _



sculp _ _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

now - mistakes - understand - culture - past

Do you like learning about the past? Learning about the
 ① _____ shows us models of good behavior and teaches us
 to learn from the many ② _____ of others. Learning about the
 past helps us ③ _____ the things people do and say now. We
 can learn more about our ④ _____ by understanding our past.

3 Read, order, and write:

1. things - like - seeing - I - in - museums.



Unit 8

2. like - you - **Do** - the past - learning - about?

▶ ?

3. looking at - prefer - **I** - in - books - things.

▶

4. is - your - **Where** - house - parents'?

▶ ?

5. past - **Why** - learn - do - about - we - the?

▶ ?

6. artifacts - learning - love - **I** - about - the past - from.

▶

4 Look and write the apostrophes:



Student's
Book

1. It s Zayn s football.

2. I ve got some clay and I m making a cup.

3. There aren t any sculptures in front of the museum.

4. Leila s book is on the teacher s desk.

5. Where s your parents house?

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"Are you with or against learning about the past?"

▶ Ideas to help you:

culture - artifacts - museums

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 5

Art in Ancient Egypt



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



archaeologist
عالم آثار



tomb
مقبرة



gold
معدن الذهب



afterlife
ما بعد الحياة



statue
تمثال



paintings
نقوشات - رسومات



temple
معبد



the Sphinx
أبو الهول



Ancient Egyptians
المصريون القدماء



the Pharaohs
الفراعنة



model
نموذج

We can see some of these objects in museums.



objects
أشياء

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

thousands of years ago

منذ آلاف السنين

all around the world

في كل أنحاء العالم

art

فن

as well as

بالإضافة إلى

for a long time

لفترة طويلة

nearly

تقريبًا

boat

قارب

size

حجم - مقاس

Adjectives

famous	مشهور	precious metals	معادن ثمينة
popular	محبوب - مشهور	colored glass	زجاج ملون
important	هام - مهم	hot country	دولة حارة
powerful	قوي	daily life	الحياة اليومية
detailed	مفصل	enormous	ضخم

Vocabulary Study



Student's Book

archaeologist	: a person who studies artifacts to learn more about the past
tomb	: a place to put people who have died
gold	: an expensive metal for jewelry and other objects
afterlife	: ideas about what happens after death
model	: a small statue or object that looks like a real thing
pharaohs	: the rulers in Ancient Egypt

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
believe يؤمن - يعتقد	believed	believed
survive يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived
use يستخدم	used	used

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
see يرى	saw	seen
find يجد	found	found
show يبين - يعرض	showed	shown



Read and learn



Art in Ancient Egypt

الفن في مصر القديمة

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures, jewelry and other artifacts from thousands of years ago.



There are many statues and paintings in ancient temples. Because Egypt is a very dry country, the paintings and statues have survived for a long time.

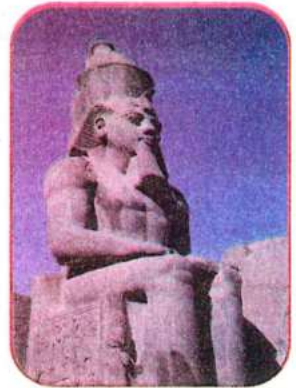
الفن المصري القديم مشهور في جميع أنحاء العالم. يمكننا اليوم أن نرى اللوحات والمنحوتات والمجوهرات وغيرها من الأعمال الفنية التي تعود إلى آلاف السنين. يوجد العديد من التماثيل واللوحات في المعابد القديمة. ولأن مصر بلد جاف للغاية، فقد ظلت الرسومات والتماثيل لفترة طويلة.

Archaeologists have also found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the Pharaohs. People believed that these artifacts would help them in the **afterlife**. There were small **models** of boats, animals, people - lots of things that were important in daily life. Paintings in **tombs** often showed pictures of the person in the afterlife, too.



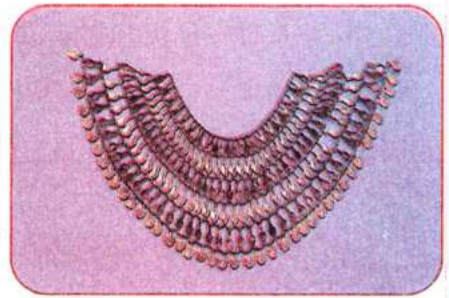
وجد علماء الآثار أيضًا الكثير من القطع الأثرية المهمة في مقابر الفراعنة. اعتقد الناس أن هذه القطع الأثرية ستساعدهم في الحياة الآخرة. كانت هناك نماذج صغيرة من القوارب والحيوانات والبشر - الكثير من الأشياء التي كانت مهمة في الحياة اليومية. غالبًا ما أظهرت الرسومات في المقابر صورًا للشخص في الحياة الآخرة أيضًا.

Today we can see some of these objects in museums and learn about the past. Ancient Egyptians also made enormous sculptures, such as the statues of Ramses II at Abu Simbel. They are nearly 20 meters tall. The Great Sphinx of Giza is nearly 73 meters long! The size of these sculptures made them very important and powerful.



اليوم نستطيع أن نرى بعض هذه الأشياء في المتاحف والتعرف على الماضي. صنع المصريون القدماء تماثيل ضخمة أيضًا، مثل تماثيل رمسيس الثاني في أبو سمبل. يبلغ ارتفاعهم ما يقرب من 20 مترًا. يبلغ طول تمثال أبو الهول بالجيزة 73 مترًا تقريبًا! حجم هذه المنحوتات والتحف جعلها مهمة جدًا وقوية.

Small sculptures and artifacts were made, too. These were very detailed and beautiful. Egyptians used precious metals such as **gold**, as well as wood and colored glass. The artifacts were often colorful. The most popular colors were blue, red, green, black and gold.



تم صنع المنحوتات والتحف الصغيرة أيضًا وكانت جميلة ومليئة بالتفاصيل. استخدم المصريون المعادن النفيسة مثل الذهب، بالإضافة إلى الخشب والزجاج الملون. كانت القطع الأثرية غالبًا ملونة. كانت الألوان الأكثر شيوعًا هي الأزرق والأحمر والأخضر والأسود والذهبي.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

afterlife - models - metals - Archaeologists - tombs

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. ① have found lots of important artifacts in ② for the Pharaohs. People in Ancient Egypt believed that these artifacts would help them in the ③ There were small ④ of boats, animals, people - lots of things that were important in daily life.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

detailed - gold - paintings - afterlife - tombs

We can see amazing art from Ancient Egypt nowadays. There are many statues and ① in ancient temples. Paintings in ② often showed pictures of the person in the afterlife. Small sculptures and artifacts were made, too. These were very ③ and beautiful. Egyptians used precious metals such as ④, as well as wood and colored glass. The artifacts were often colorful.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



Activity
Book

There are lots of paintings, jewelry, sculptures and artifacts from Ancient Egypt in museums today. They are thousands of years old. Archaeologists have also found important artifacts in the Pharaohs' tombs. Some of these artifacts are small models of animals, people and boats. The paintings show the Pharaohs.

The Ancient Egyptians also made huge sculptures and they built amazing temples. The statues of Ramses II at Abu Simbel are nearly 20 meters tall. The Great Sphinx of Giza is nearly 73 meters long! The Ancient Egyptians made small sculptures and artifacts, too. They used gold, wood and colored glass.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are lots of artifacts from Ancient Egypt in (schools - museums - walls) today.
2. The Ancient Egyptians made huge (paintings - sculptures - tombs) like Ramses II at Abu Simbel.

B Answer these questions:

3. What have archaeologists found?

▶

4. How long is the Great Sphinx of Giza?

▶

5. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make small sculptures and artifacts?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read, order, and write:

1. a - very - is - Egypt - country - dry.

▶

2. artifacts - lots - of - found - have - Archaeologists.

▶

3. often - were - The - artifacts - colorful.

▶

4. Egyptian - famous - Ancient - is - art - very.

▶

5. statues - There - many - are - ancient - temples - in.

▶

6. tombs - models - people - Why - did - put - in?

▶ ?

Lessons 6-7-8 Art: Shading & Math: Geometric patterns

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



shading

تظليل



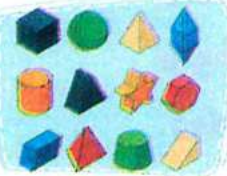
shadow

ظل



sketch

رسم تخطيطي



geometric patterns

أشكال هندسية



artist

فنان



tone

نغمة



styles

أساليب - أنماط



basic things

أشياء أساسية



three-dimensional

ثلاثي الأبعاد



realistic

واقعي - حقيقي



abstract

مجرد - معنوي



fine lines

خطوط رفيعة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

soft pencil

قلم رصاص ذو خط واضح

light

ضوء - خفيف

hard pencil

قلم رصاص ذو خط خفيف

something

شيء ما

dark pencil

قلم رصاص ذو خط ثقيل

real

حقيقي

nature

الطبيعة

carefully

بغاية - بحرص

scene

مشهد - منظر

flat

مستوي - مسطح

shapes	أشكال	different places	أماكن مختلفة
square	مربع	building	مبنى
triangle	مثلث	wall	حائط
circle	دائرة	ceiling	سقف
angle	زاوية	tiles	بلاط
sides	أضلاع - جوانب	decorate	يزين - يزخرف

Prepositions

ways of working	طرق العمل	come from	يأتي من
close to each other	قريبة من بعضها	go on	يوامل - يستمر
look for	يبحث عن	write about	يكتب عن

Vocabulary Study AB Activity Book

shading	: is the coloring of a drawing using different levels of darkness and light.
realistic art	: shows how things look in real life.
sculptures	: might be stone, metal, wood, fabric or recycled materials.
a painting	: is a drawing that is colored with a liquid and a brush.
three-dimensional art	: is a flat picture that uses height, depth and width to make the drawing look like it's sticking out of the page.
shadow	: a dark area or shape produced by a body coming between rays of light and a surface.
fine lines	: soft and thin lines
soft pencils	: pencils that make darker marks
hard pencils	: pencils that produce lighter marks
dark pencils	: pencils that make dark marks
abstract	: existing in thought or as an idea but not having a physical or concrete existence

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
rub	يفرك - يمسح	rubbed	rubbed
add	يضيف	added	added
mix together	تمتزج سوياً	mixed together	mixed together
repeat	يكرر	repeated	repeated
paint	يلون - يدهن	painted	painted
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
copy	ينسخ	copied	copied
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	decorated	decorated
create	يخلق - يبتكر	created	created

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
read about	يقرأ عن	read about	read about
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
take	يأخذ	took	taken
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
come from	يأتي من	came from	come from
make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure



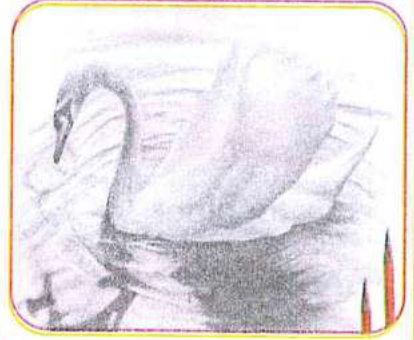
Read and learn



Art: Shading التظليل

It can take a very long time to paint or draw a picture. Artists have lots of different styles and ways of working, but one of the basic and most important things to learn is **shading**.

قد يستغرق تلوين أو رسم صورة وقتًا طويلاً. يتمتع الفنانون بالعديد من الأساليب وطرق العمل المختلفة، لكن أحد الأشياء الأساسية والأكثر أهمية للتعلم هو التظليل.



The picture you are drawing is flat, but the object you are copying is **three-dimensional**. To make it look three-dimensional in your picture, you use shading. This makes a pencil drawing look interesting and real. You can use hard pencils to draw fine lines, and soft, dark pencils for shading.

الصورة التي ترسمها مسطحة، لكن الشيء الذي ترسمه ثلاثي الأبعاد، ولجعلها تبدو ثلاثية الأبعاد في رسمتك، فإنك تستخدم التظليل. هذا يجعل الرسم بالقلم الرصاص يبدو ممتعًا وحقيقيًا. يمكنك استخدام أقلام رصاص ملونة لرسم خطوط دقيقة وأقلام رصاص ناعمة داكنة للتظليل.

You need to know where the light is coming from in your picture so you can add **realistic** shading.

Look carefully at your object to see the shades of light and dark.

You can add shading by doing lots of small lines close to each other, or by rubbing the pencil lines so they mix together.

تحتاج إلى معرفة مصدر الضوء في رسمتك حتى تتمكن من إضافة تظليل واقعي. انظر بتدقيق إلى الشيء الذي ترسمه لترى ظلال الضوء والظلام. يمكنك إضافة التظليل بعمل الكثير من الخطوط الصغيرة بالقرب من بعضها البعض، أو عن طريق فرك خطوط القلم الرصاص حتى تختلط معًا.

How to draw a picture

كيف ترسم صورة

- 1 Choose an object to copy — something in the classroom or something from nature.
اختر شيئاً لترسمه — شيئاً ما في الفصل أو شيئاً من الطبيعة.
- 2 Make a sketch of what you want to draw with a fine pencil.
قم بعمل رسم تخطيطي لما تريد رسمه بقلم رصاص خطه رفيع.
- 3 Study the scene and decide where the light is coming from. Can you see shadows around your object?
ادرس المشهد وحدد مصدر الضوء. هل تستطيع رؤية الظلال حول الشيء الخاص بك؟
- 4 Add shading to make the object looks real.
أضف تظليلاً لجعل الشيء يبدو حقيقياً.



Math

What shapes can you see?

Geometric patterns الأنماط الهندسية

A geometric pattern is made of lots of **shapes**. We can see these in different places around us every day. People use geometric shapes in art to create patterns. Geometric shapes can create **realistic** patterns. These can be very beautiful.



يُصنع النمط الهندسي من الكثير من الأشكال. ونستطيع أن نراهم في أماكن مختلفة من حولنا كل يوم. يستخدم الناس الأشكال الهندسية في الفن لإنشاء أنماط. يمكن أن تُشكل الأشكال الهندسية أنماطاً حقيقية جميلة جداً.

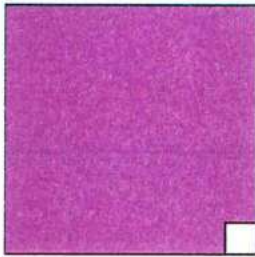
Many buildings have geometric patterns in tiles. These small squares can decorate walls and ceilings. They use traditional patterns which are very detailed. The colors and styles are very beautiful. You can also see geometric patterns in **jewelry** and in paintings from Ancient Egypt.

العديد من المباني لها أنماط هندسية في البلاط. يمكن لهذه المربعات الصغيرة تزيين الجدران والأسقف. يستخدمون الأنماط التقليدية التي تكون مليئة بالتفاصيل، كما أن لها أنماط وأشكال جميلة جدًا. يمكنك أيضًا رؤية أنماط هندسية في المجوهرات وفي اللوحات من مصر القديمة.

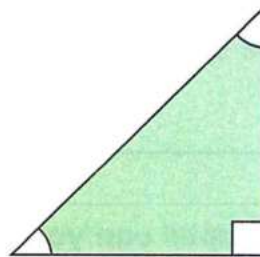
Do you know these angles?

هل تعرف هذه الزوايا؟

1 90°



2 180°



3 360°



How to make patterns

كيف ترسم أنماط؟

1 To make a pattern, you **repeat** the same shape or shapes many times.

لعمل نمط، عليك تكرار نفس الشكل أو الأشكال عدة مرات.

2 You often need a **ruler** to make a repeating pattern.

غالبًا تحتاج لمسطرة لعمل نمط متكرر.

3 If you use triangles or squares, you need to **measure** them to make sure the angles and sides are correct.

إذا كنت تستخدم مثلثات أو مربعات فأنت بحاجة إلى قياسها للتأكد أن الزوايا والأضلاع صحيحة.

Exercises on Lessons 6 7 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



Student's
Book

correct - angles - measure - ruler - repeat

There are some steps to make a pattern. To make a pattern, you
 ① the same shape or shapes many times. You often need
 a ② to make a repeating pattern. If you use triangles
 or squares, you need to ③ them to make sure the
 ④ and sides are correct.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

picture - shading - lines - dark - realistic

It can take a very long time to paint or draw a picture. You need to
 know where the light is coming from in your picture so you can add
 ① shading. Look carefully at your object to see the
 shades of light and ② You can add ③ by
 doing lots of small lines close to each other, or by rubbing the pencil
 ④ so they mix together.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A geometric pattern is made of lots of shapes. We can see these in
 different places around us every day. People use geometric shapes in
 art to create patterns. Geometric shapes can create realistic patterns.
 These can be very beautiful.

Many buildings have geometric patterns in tiles. These small squares
 can decorate walls and ceilings. They use traditional patterns which
 are very detailed. The colors and styles are very beautiful. You can
 also see geometric patterns in jewelry and in paintings from Ancient
 Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A geometric pattern is made of lots of (colors - shapes - styles).
2. Geometric shapes can create (realistic - abstract - colorful) patterns.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do people use geometric shapes in art?

▶

4. How did Ancient Egyptians use geometric shapes?

▶

5. Where can you see geometric patterns?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read, order, and write:

1. shading - do - you - do - How?

▶ ?

2. use - do - Why - artists - shading?

▶ ?

3. geometric - use - People - in - art - shapes.

▶

4. see - you - can - shapes - What?

▶ ?

5. patterns - every day - Where - do - see - you?

▶ ?

6. buildings - Many - geometric - tiles - in - patterns - have.

▶

7. styles - colors - The - and - are - beautiful.

▶

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



trea _ _ _ _



adven _ _ _ _



sculp _ _ _ _



mea _ _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

jewelry - squares - decorate - styles - geometric

A geometric pattern is made of lots of shapes. Many buildings have ① patterns in tiles. These small squares can ② walls and ceilings. They use traditional patterns which are very detailed. The colors and ③ are very beautiful. You can also see geometric patterns in ④ and in paintings from Ancient Egypt.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (6Ms)

It can take a very long time to paint or draw a picture. Artists have lots of different styles and ways of working, but one of the basic and most important things to learn is shading.

The picture you are drawing is flat, but the object you are copying is three-dimensional. To make it look three-dimensional in your picture, you use shading.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. (Actors - Artists - Singers) have lots of different styles and ways of working.
2. The picture you are drawing is (square - triangle - flat).

B Answer these questions:

3. How long does it take to paint or draw a picture? ►

4. What is the most important style in drawing or painting?
 5. Summarize the text in two lines.
 6. Give a suitable title to the text.

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

- Nesma looked at books
- Grandma used to be

(B)

- ☐ a) an inventor, too.
☐ b) and websites for ideas.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma didn't think her ideas were very good. ()
 4. Nesma's dad was carrying a new box. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

- How (many - much - old) girls are there?
- There isn't (a - some - any) clay.
- There (am - is - are) some boys in the playground.
- How much (desks - paper - chairs) is there?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

- many - made - Ancient - Egyptians - sculptures - enormous.
- learn - about - do - we - Why - the past??

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The beautiful things you can see in the Egyptian Museum."

► Ideas to help you: - artifacts - sculptures
 - different jewelry

.....



Theme (3)
How the world works

Unit 9

At the hospital
في المستشفى



Objectives

Vocabulary	Health: treatment, disease, sore, injury, medicine, operation, scan, surgery, treatment, X-ray, infection Medical instruments: bandage, blood pressure, monitor, crutches, face mask, first-aid kit, stethoscope, syringe, wheelchair
Language	- If my little brother has an accident, he cries. - Plants die if you don't water them. - They must drink lots of water. - You mustn't eat in the classroom.
Reading	A health and safety quiz; a text about getting to hospital in Australia
Phonics	Homophones: where, wear / see, sea /write, right
Life skills	Problem-solving / Self-management
Values	Independence / Appreciation of science
Issues and challenges	Therapeutic health
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	History: Medicine in the past and medicine now

Lesson 1

At the hospital

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**hospital**

مستشفى

**ill - sick**

مريض

**disease**

مرض

**medicine**

دواء

**surgery**

جراحة - عملية جراحية

**operation**

عملية جراحية

**X-ray**

أشعة إكس

**accident**

حادثة

**scan (n) (v)**

فحص بالأشعة - يفحص

**infection**

عدوى

**sore**

التهاب - ملتهب

**hurt**

يؤلم

**injury**

إصابة

**treat (v)**

يعالج

**treatment (n)**

علاج

**cast**

جبيرة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

doctor	طبيب	organ	عضو من أعضاء الجسم
nurse	ممرضة	bone	عظمة
pain	ألم	elbow	كوع
cells	خلايا	arm	ذراع
helmet	خوذة	head	رأس
particular	خاص - مميز	muscle	عضلة
bacteria	بكتيريا	swallow	يبتلع
viruses	فيروسات	damaged	تالفة
liquid	سائل	problem	مشكلة
tablets	أقراص	the best way	أفضل طريقة

Prepositions

need to	يحتاج إلى	decide to	يقرر أن (تُتبع بالمصدر)
for treatment	للعلاج	decide on	يقرر (تُتبع باسم)
because of	بسبب	fall off ...	يسقط من على ...
find out	يكتشف	for a long time	لفترة طويلة

Sentences & Expressions

do surgery (يُجري عملية جراحية) (الطبيب)	have an infection عنده إصابة (عدوى)
have surgery (يُجري له عملية جراحية) (المريض)	have an accident يتعرض لحادثة
do an operation (يقوم بعملية جراحية) (الطبيب)	a particular part of your body جزء معين في جسمك
have an operation (يخضع لعملية جراحية) (المريض)	This lets a doctor see inside your body. هذا يُمكن الطبيب من أن يرى ما بداخل جسمك.

do a scan	يعمل فحص بالأشعة	Don't worry.	لا تقلق.
wear a cast	يضع جبيرة	You'll be fine.	سوف تكون بخير.
have a disease	عنده مرض	What is wrong with you?	ماذا بك؟ مما تشتكى؟
go for treatment	يذهب للعلاج	make you feel better	يجعلك تشعر بتحسن

Vocabulary Study

treatment	: this is a way of making someone better
disease	: this happens when the cells of your body are damaged because of an infection
infection	: this happens when bacteria or viruses enter your body
injury	: when you hurt your body in an accident
medicine	: this is a liquid you drink or a tablet you swallow
surgery	: a surgeon can do this to make you better if you are very sick
scan	: this lets a doctor see inside your body
sore	: causing pain
operation	: an act of surgery performed on a patient
cast	: a hard cover fitted over your arm, leg etc., to support a broken bone
X-ray	: a type of ray that doctors use to see inside your body
hospital	: a place where people can go for treatment

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
happen	يحدث	happened		happened	
enter	يدخل	entered		entered	
decide on	يقرر	decided on		decided on	
cause	يسبب	caused		caused	
swallow	يبتلع	swallowed		swallowed	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
be (am - is - are)	يكون	was - were	been
hurt	يصيب - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
have	يملك - يتعرض لـ	had	had
do	يفعل	did	done
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
get better	يتحسن	got better	got better
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt
fall off	يسقط - يقع	fell off	fallen off
take	يأخذ	took	taken
give	يعطي	gave	given
break	يكسر	broke	broken
know	يعرف	knew	known



Read and learn

Do you think Hany should wear a cast?
هل تعتقد أن هاني يجب أن يضع جبيرة؟

1

We're at the hospital because Hany has an **injury**. He hurt his elbow when he fell off his bike in the park. He had a helmet, so he didn't hurt his head. Hany doesn't want to wear a cast.

نحن في المستشفى لأن هاني تعرض لإصابة. لقد أصيب في كوعه عندما سقط من على دراجته في الحديقة. لقد كان يرتدي خوذة، لذلك لم يصب رأسه بأذى. لا يريد هاني وضع جبيرة.

2

I don't want to wear a cast!

لا أريد أن أضع جبيرة!

4

Don't worry. You'll be fine. You don't need to wear it for a long time.

لا تقلق. ستكون على ما يرام. أنت لا تحتاج أن تضعها لفترة طويلة.

3

Hany's arm hurts and he needs an **X-ray**. If you break your arm, you wear a **cast**.

ذراع هاني يؤلمه ويجب أن يقوم بعمل فحص بأشعة إكس (الأشعة السينية). إذا كسرت ذراعك، ستضع جبيرة.

Hospitals

المستشفيات

A hospital is a place where people can go for **treatment**. Sometimes people have a disease or **infection** that makes them ill. Sometimes they have an **injury** because of an **accident**. At the hospital, you will



see a doctor or a nurse. They might ask questions to find out what is wrong with you. They need to know what hurts or how you feel. They might decide to:

المستشفى هي المكان الذي يستطيع الناس أن يذهبوا إليه للعلاج. في بعض الأحيان يكون لدى الأشخاص مرض أو عدوى تجعلهم مرضى. في بعض الأحيان يكون لديهم إصابة بسبب حادث. في المستشفى ستقابل طبيباً أو ممرضة. قد يطرحون عليك أسئلة لمعرفة سبب شكواك. إنهم بحاجة إلى معرفة ما يؤلمك أو ما تشعر به، قد يقررون:

- ▶ Give you medicine – you drink or swallow this to help you get better.
- ▶ Give you an X-ray to find out if you have broken a bone.
- ▶ Do surgery – an operation to make a particular part of your body better.
- ▶ Do a **scan** to find out the problem if you have a muscle or organ that is **sore**.

▶ إعطاءك دواء – تشربه أو تبتلعه لمساعدتك على التحسن.

▶ القيام بعمل فحص بأشعة إكس (الأشعة السينية) لمعرفة ما إذا كان لديك كسر في العظام.

▶ القيام بإجراء عملية جراحية لجعل جزء معين من جسمك يكون أفضل.

▶ إجراء فحص لمعرفة ما إذا كان لديك عضلة أو عضو به التهاب.

When the doctors know what the problem is, they can decide on the best way to **treat** you.

عندما يعرف الأطباء ما هي المشكلة، يمكنهم تحديد أفضل طريقة لعلاجك.

Grammar Study



Remember



The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form:

(has - have) + PP

يتكون من

▶ I **have taken** medicine.▶ She **has been** to hospital.

■ In the interrogative form, we use (**has - have**) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the past participle.

عند عمل سؤال على زمن المضارع التام ، نبدأ السؤال بـ (**has - have**) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

○ Have you **ever had** an accident?

▶ Yes, I **have**. / No, I **have never had** an accident.

○ Has she **taken** medicine?

▶ Yes, she **has**. / No, she **hasn't**.

Exercises on Lesson

1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

injury - hospital - elbow - cast - helmet

A hospital is a place where people can go for treatment. We're at the ① because Hany has an ② He hurt his ③ when he fell off his bike in the park. He had a helmet, so he didn't hurt his head. Hany doesn't want to wear a ④

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A hospital is a place where people can go for treatment. Sometimes people have a disease or infection that makes them ill. Sometimes they have an injury because of an accident. At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. They might ask questions to find out what is wrong with you. They need to know what hurts or how you feel. They might decide to give you medicine – you drink or swallow this to help you get better, give you an X-ray to find out if you have broken a bone, do surgery – an operation to make a particular part of your body better or do a scan to find out the problem if you have a muscle or organ that is sore.

When the doctors know what the problem is, they can decide on the best way to treat you.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People go to the hospital for (pleasure - treatment - infection).
2. You can do a/an (scan - injury - accident) using an X-ray.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do people go to hospitals?

▶

4. Who will you see at the hospital?

▶

5. Why do doctors and nurses ask you questions?

▶

6. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶

3 Read, order, and write:

1. are - Where - and - Hana - Hany?

▶ ?

2. at - We - are - hospital - the.

▶

3. you - ever - Have - an - accident - had?

▶ ?

4. wearing - Hany - Was - helmet - a?

▶ ?

5. injury - an - has - Hany.

▶

6. did - What - accident - have - Hany?

▶ ?

7. want - to - don't - I - a cast - wear!

▶ !

8. a hospital - to - been - you - ever - Have?

▶ ?

4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

► Ideas to help you:

accident - surgery - medicine

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 2-3 Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Language



Phonics: Homophones



sea

بحر



see

يرى



here

هنا



hear

يسمع



where

حيث - أين



wear

يرتدي - يضع



right

صحيح - موافق



write

يكتب



flour

دقيق



flower

زهرة



plain

سادة



plane

طائرة

Tip!

- Homophones are words that sound the same but have a different meaning and spelling.

التجانس اللفظي هو الكلمات التي تبدو متشابهة في نطقها ولكن لها معنى وهجاء مختلف.



Listen and say



Can you tell me **where** it hurts?



You have to **wear** a cast for six weeks.



I'll **write** down your temperature.



Is this the **right** medicine?

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

If	إذا - لو	get burned	يحترق
temperature	درجة الحرارة	die	يموت
by the sea	بجوار البحر	fall over	يقع - يسقط
fire	نيران	hurt yourself	تجرح نفسك
garden	حديقة	pattern	شكل - نمط
write down	يحدون	umbrella	شمسية

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
die	يموت	died	died

Unit 9

Present	Past	PP
touch يلمس	touched	touched
travel يسافر	traveled	traveled
water يروي - يسقي	watered	watered
pick يقطع - يلتقط	picked	picked
cry يبكي	cried	cried

أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular verbs

Present	Past	PP
see يرى	saw	seen
write يكتب	wrote	written
hear يسمع	heard	heard
wear a cast يضع جبيرة	wore a cast	worn a cast
hurt يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt	hurt
tell يخبر	told	told
get burned يحترق	got burned	got burned

Grammar Study

The First Conditional [If] الحالة الصفرية 1

If + present simple → present simple

If + مضارع بسيط → مضارع بسيط

■ We use the zero conditional to describe stated facts.

■ نستخدم قاعدة (if) الصفرية للتعبير عن حقائق ثابتة.

- ▶ If my little sister **has** an accident, she **cries**.
- ▶ If you **fall** over, you **hurt** yourself.
- ▶ If he **touches** a fire, he **gets** burned.
- ▶ She **wears** a cast if she **breaks** her leg.
- ▶ Plants **die** if you **don't water** them.

لاحظ أن:

إذا جاءت (if) في أول الجملة نضع (comma,) قبل الجملة الثانية، أما إذا جاءت (if) في منتصف الجملة لا نضع (comma,).

Exercises on Lessons 2 3



1 Listen and write the missing sounds:

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.



s _ _



s _ _



fl _ _ _



fl _ _ _ _



r _ _ _ _



wr _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hurts - gets - fall - accident - breaks

My little sister's name is Huda. If my little sister has an ①, she cries. If she falls over, she ② herself. She wears a cast if she ③ her leg. She ④ better if she takes medicine.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you fall over, you (**hurt** - **hurts**) yourself. 
2. If you (**touch** - **touched**) a fire, you get burned. 
3. You get better if you (**take** - **will take**) medicine. 
4. You (**wear** - **wore**) a cast if you break your leg. 
5. If my little sister (**has** - **have** - **had**) an accident, she cries.
6. Plants die if you (**water** - **waters** - **don't water**) them.
7. If you (**eats** - **don't eat** - **doesn't eat**) healthy food, you get sick.
8. If you (**cycle** - **will cycle** - **cycles**) to school, you have a strong body.
9. If you (**has** - **have** - **had**) an operation, you feel better soon.
10. Your arm (**got** - **gets** - **get**) better if you wear a cast.
11. If you (**mix** - **mixes** - **mixing**) yellow and red, you get orange.
12. If you (**add** - **adding** - **adds**) sugar to coffee, it becomes sweet.
13. If you freeze water, it (**become** - **becomes** - **became**) ice.
14. If you (**don't** - **doesn't** - **didn't**) drink water, you get thirsty.

4 Underline the homophones:

Student's
BookCan you see the sea?

Are there four?

Where, where is the sea?

No, there's more!

It's here. It's here.

They're for you and me,

It's green and blue.

And for everyone here at the sea!

How many umbrellas can you see by the sea?

5 Read, order, and write:

1. don't - eat, - **if** - we - hungry - we get.

▶

2. hurt - it - does - **Where**?

▶ ?

3. it - ice, - melts - you - **if** - heat.

▶

4. please - you - write - **Can** - name, - your?

▶ ?

5. write - temperature - down - will - **I** - your.

▶

6 Read, check in a dictionary and write:



Student's
Book

flour - flower - plain - plane

1. I picked a beautiful ① in the garden.

2. You can travel to Australia by ②

3. My bag doesn't have a pattern. It's ③

4. You need ④, sugar and eggs to make a cake.

Lessons 4-5 Problem-solving & Language use

Sentences & Expressions



have an infection	يصاب بالعدوى	raise your hand	ترفع يدك
get lots of rest	يحصل على الكثير من الراحة	make fun of your classmates	تسخر من زملائك في الفصل
arrive on time	يصل في الوقت المحدد	keep your class clean	تحافظ على نظافة فصلك
three times a day	ثلاث مرات في اليوم	Good idea.	فكرة جيدة.
play soccer	يلعب كرة القدم	play loud music	يعزف موسيقى صاخبة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

survey	استطلاع رأي	bandage	ضمادة
rules	قواعد	bored	شاعر بالملل
soccer	كرة القدم	loud music	موسيقى صاخبة
coloring pens	أقلام تلوين	visitor	زائر
skateboard (v)	يتزلج	sore throat	التهاب في الحلق
late	متأخر	so that	لكي
had to	كان لزامًا عليه - اضطر أن	unless	إذا لم - لو لم

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to		listened to	
shout	يصرخ	shouted		shouted	
try	يحاول	tried		tried	
arrive	يصل	arrived		arrived	
raise	يرفع	raised		raised	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get rest	يستريح	got rest	got rest
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
have to	يضطر أن	had to	had to
cut	يجرح	cut	cut



Read and learn



Hospital rules قواعد المستشفى



You **must** take these three times a day.
عليك أن تتناول هذه ثلاث مرات يوميًا.



You **mustn't** eat here.
ممنوع تناول الطعام هنا.



They **must** drink lots of water.
يجب عليهم شرب الكثير من الماء.



She **mustn't** try to skateboard.
ممنوع أن تحاول أن تتزلج.



You **must** get lots of rest.
يجب أن تحصل على الكثير من الراحة.



You **mustn't** play soccer in the hospital.
ممنوع أن تلعب كرة القدم في المستشفى.



You **must** listen to the doctors and nurses.
يجب أن تستمع إلى الأطباء والممرضات.



You **mustn't** have more than three visitors.
لا يجب أن يكون لديك أكثر من ثلاثة زوار.



You **must** take your medicine.
يجب أن تأخذ دوائك.



You **mustn't** play loud music.
ممنوع تشغيل الموسيقى الصاخبة.

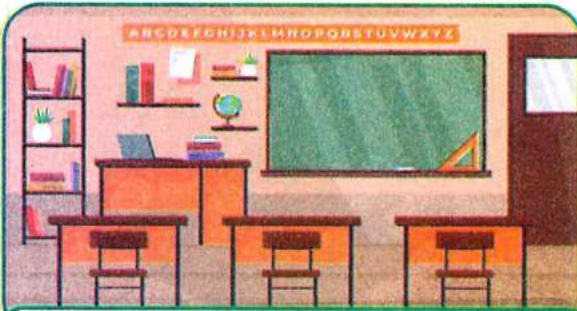
School rules قواعد المدرسة



You **must** arrive on time.
يجب أن تصل في الوقت المحدد.



You **mustn't** talk unless you raise your hand.
لا يجب أن تتحدث إلا إذا رفعت يدك.



You **must** keep your class clean.
يجب أن تحافظ على فصلك نظيفًا.



You **mustn't** shout.
لا يجب أن تصيح.



You **must** listen to your teacher.
يجب أن تستمع إلى معلمك.



You **mustn't** make fun of classmates.
يجب ألا تسخر من زملائك في الفصل.

Problem-solving



If you ride your bike to school, you must wear a helmet.

إذا ركبت دراجتك إلى المدرسة، يجب أن ترتدي خوذة.



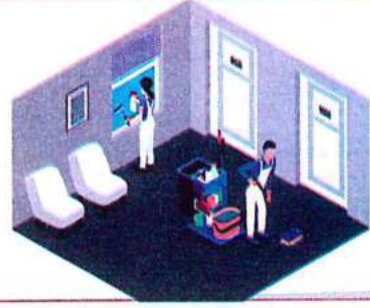
If the doctor thinks you have broken a bone, you have an X-ray.

إذا اعتقد الطبيب أنك كسرت عظمة، ستجري أشعة سينية.



For a sore throat you can eat some fruit.

من أجل التهاب الحلق يمكنك أكل بعض الفاكهة.



Hospitals must be very clean so that people don't get infections.

يجب أن تكون المستشفيات نظيفة للغاية حتى لا يصاب الناس بالعدوى.



If the doctor gives you medicine, you mustn't forget to take it.

إذا أعطاك الطبيب الدواء، فلا يجب أن تنسى تناوله.

Grammar Study



must - mustn't

لازم - لا بد must



تستخدم للإلزام

- He **must take** this medicine three times a day.
- You **must drink** lots of water.

لا يجب - ممنوع mustn't



تستخدم للمنع أو التحريم

- She **mustn't eat** in the class.
- You **mustn't play** football in the street.

■ Don't forget that (**must - mustn't**) are followed by the bare verb.

لا تنس أن (**must - mustn't**) لا بد أن يتبعا بالفعل في المصدر (مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات).

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rest - mustn't - take - play - must

When you are at the hospital, you must follow the hospital rules. You ① listen to the doctors and nurses. You must ② your medicine. You must get lots of ③ when you are sick. You ④ play loud music.

2 Choose the correct answer: **must - mustn't**

1. You (**must - mustn't**) play soccer in the hospital.
2. You (**must - mustn't**) get lots of rest when you are sick.
3. You (**must - mustn't**) play loud music.
4. You (**must - mustn't**) take your medicine.
5. You (**must - mustn't**) listen to the doctors and nurses.
6. She **mustn't** (**have - has - had**) more than three visitors.



Term 2

Unit 9

7. You (must - isn't - mustn't) arrive on time.
8. You (must - mustn't - aren't) shout in the class.
9. He must (listens - listened - listen) to his teacher.
10. You (doesn't - must - mustn't) talk unless you raise your hand.
11. You (isn't - must - mustn't) make fun of classmates.
12. You (doesn't - must - mustn't) keep your class clean.

3 Read, order, and write:

1. medicine - your - take - must - You. ►
2. must - You - arrive - time - on. ►
3. play - mustn't - You - music - loud. ►
4. very - Hospitals - be - must - clean. ►
5. respect - must - You - teachers - your. ►
6. talk - mustn't - You - unless - raise - you - your hand. ►

4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

You are going to visit a friend in the hospital. She had an ear infection, and she had to have an operation. What will you take for her? Why?

"A visit to a friend in the hospital"

For example: She might be bored in the hospital. We can take coloring pens for her.

► Ideas to help you:

fruit - books - flowers

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 6

Let's look for words

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**first-aid kit**

صندوق الإسعافات الأولية

**cut (n)**

جرح

**bandage**

ضمادة

**face mask**

واقى الوجه - كمامة

**stethoscope**

سماعة الطبيب

**crutches**

عكازات

**syringe**

بسرنية (حقنة)

**wheelchair**

كرسي متحرك

**blood pressure monitor**

جهاز قياس ضغط الدم

**monitor**

جهاز قياس نبض القلب

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

breathing

التنفس

equipment

معدات - أدوات

patient

مريض

health

الصحة

Term 2

Prepositions

good for	صالح لـ - جيد لـ	for example	على سبيل المثال
help with	يساعد في	talk about	يتكلم عن

Vocabulary Study **AB** Activity Book

bandage	: Put this cloth around an injury to keep it clean.
stethoscope	: A doctor uses this to listen to your heart.
first-aid kit	: A bag or box of medicine and health equipment.
syringe	: This can put medicine inside your body.
face mask	: Surgeons wear this on their face when they do operations.
crutches	: You can use these to help you walk when you've hurt your leg.
wheelchair	: You can sit in this and move around when you can't walk.
blood pressure monitor	: A nurse uses this to check the health of your heart.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
check	يفحص - يراجع	checked	checked
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	breathed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
put	يضع	put	put



Read and learn

1

Doctors and nurses sometimes wear face masks to protect their patients.
يرتدي الأطباء والممرضات أحياناً أوقية للوجه (كمادات) لحماية مرضاهم.

2

If there's an accident, you might need a first-aid kit with bandages.
إذا كان هناك حادث، فقد تحتاج إلى حقيبة إسعافات أولية بها ضمادات.

3

If someone has hurt their leg, they can use crutches to help them walk.
إذا أصيب شخص ما في ساقه، فيمكنه استخدام عكازات لمساعدته على المشي.

4

You can check the health of your heart with a blood pressure monitor.
تستطيع أن تتحقق من صحة قلبك باستخدام جهاز قياس ضغط الدم.

5

A doctor or nurse can put bandages on you to help a cut or injury get better.
يمكن للطبيب أو الممرضة وضع ضمادات على الجرح أو الإصابة لمساعدتها على التعافي.

6

A doctor listens to your heart and your breathing with a stethoscope.
يستمع الطبيب إلى قلبك وتنفسك باستخدام السماعة الطبية.

7

If someone can't walk after an injury or operation, they might use a wheelchair.
إذا لم يتمكن شخص ما من المشي بعد إصابة أو إجراء عملية جراحية، قد يستخدم كرسي متحرك.

8

A doctor or nurse can put medicine in your body with a syringe.
يستطيع الطبيب أو الممرضة توصيل الدواء لجسمك بواسطة حقنة.

Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stethoscopes - syringe - masks - monitor - check

There is some health equipment at a hospital. At a hospital, doctors and nurses must wear face ① to protect their patients. Doctors also use ② to listen to patients' hearts. They can check the health of a heart with a blood pressure ③ A doctor or nurse can put medicine in your body with a ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

equipment - bandages - medicine - cut - first-aid kit

You can follow these steps if you have an accident. If you had an accident, you might need a ① with bandages. A first-aid kit is a bag or box of medicine and health ② You can put ③ around an injury to keep it clean. You can put bandages on a ④, too, to help it get better.

3 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"The things doctors and nurses use"

► Ideas to help you:

stethoscope - syringe - first-aid kit



Lesson 7

History: Medicine in the past and medicine now

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



science

العلم



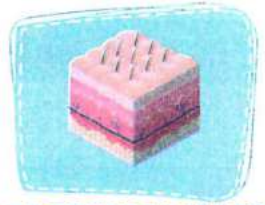
surgeon

جراح



burns

حروق



skin

جلد



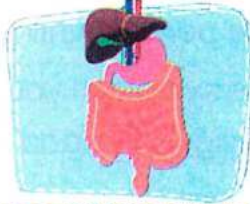
traditional medicine

الطب التقليدي



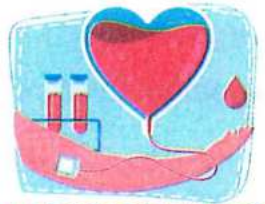
modern medicine

الطب الحديث



digestive system

الجهاز الهضمي



blood supply

إمداد (تَدَفُّق) الدم



ancient Egyptians

المصريون القدماء



papyrus

نبات البردي - برديّة



old texts

نصوص قديمة



herbs

أعشاب



aloe

نبات الصبار



mint

نعناع



honey

عسل

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

center

مركز

give advice

يعطي نصيحة

useful

مفيد - نافع

other ways

طرق أخرى

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

herbs	: any plant with leaves, seeds, or flowers used for flavoring, food, medicine, or perfume
traditional	: relating to the past times
surgeon	: the person who practices surgery
digestive system	: the system in your body that's responsible for the process of digesting food
blood supply	: providing your body with the necessary amount of blood
burns	: an injury caused by exposure to heat or flame

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
learn	يتعلَّم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
help	يساعد	helped	helped
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
treat	يعالج	treated	treated
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
use	يستخدم	used	used
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	believed	believed

أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular verbs

Present		Past	PP
give	يعطي	gave	given
get better	يتحسن	got better	got better
know	يعرف	knew	known
understand	يفهم	understood	understood



Read and learn



What herbs did ancient Egyptians use to treat diseases? ما هي الأعشاب التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء لعلاج الأمراض؟

Doctors and surgeons in the past used different medicines to modern ones, but some of their ideas are useful today. We can learn about what ancient Egyptians did from two of the oldest texts about medicine in the world:

استخدم الأطباء والجراحون في الماضي أدوية مختلفة عن الأدوية الحديثة، لكن بعضاً من أفكارهم ما زالت مفيدة لليوم. يمكننا التعرف على ما فعله المصريون القدماء من نصّين من أقدم النصوص المتعلقة بالطب في العالم:

- The Edwin Smith Papyrus is about surgery. Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations to help people get better after injuries. They could fix broken bones and injuries to the skin.

بردية إدوين سميث عن الجراحة. تمكّن الأطباء في مصر القديمة من إجراء عمليات جراحية لمساعدة الناس على التحسن بعد الإصابات. كما تمكنوا من جَبْرِ العظام المكسورة ومعالجة إصابات الجلد.

- The Ebers Papyrus gives treatments for lots of different diseases. It talks about how the heart is the center of the blood supply in the body, and it gives advice about problems with skin, teeth, eyes and other organs.

تُقدّم بردية إبيرس علاجات للعديد من الأمراض المختلفة. وتحدث عن كيف أن القلب هو مركز تدفق (إمداد) الدم في الجسم، وتقدم نصائح حول مشاكل الجلد والأسنان والعيون والأعضاء الأخرى.

Some things that ancient Egyptians believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine. For example, they used herbs to treat some diseases, and we know today that these can help – mint is good for the digestive system, and aloe can help with burns. They also used honey to treat infections and skin problems. With science today, we know that honey can make some infections better.

بعض الأشياء التي اعتقدها المصريون القدماء كانت مختلفة تمامًا، لكننا نستخدم بعضًا من أفكارهم في الطب الحديث. على سبيل المثال، فهم قد استخدموا الأعشاب لعلاج بعض الأمراض، ونعلم اليوم أن هذه الأعشاب يمكن أن تساعد _ النعناع مفيد للجهاز الهضمي، والصبار يمكن أن يساعد في الحروق. كما استخدموا العسل لعلاج الالتهابات ومشاكل الجلد. وبالعلم اليوم، نعرف أن العسل يمكن أن يداوي بعض الالتهابات.

Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

honey - science - herbs - digestive - skin

Some things that ancient Egyptians believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine. For example, they used ① to treat some diseases, and we know today that these can help - mint is good for the ② system, and aloe can help with burns. They also used ③ to treat infections and skin problems. With ④ today, we know that honey can make some infections better.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

organs - blood - treatments - skin - surgeons

Doctors and surgeons in ancient Egypt could do operations to help people get better after injuries. There were ① for lots of different diseases. They knew how the heart is the center of the ② supply in the body, and they gave advice about problems with ③, teeth, eyes and other ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

The Edwin Smith Papyrus and the Ebers Papyrus are two of the oldest texts in the world. The Edwin Smith Papyrus is about surgery in ancient Egypt. Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations and fix broken bones. There are treatments for different diseases in the Ebers Papyrus. The Ebers Papyrus talks about the heart and the body's blood supply. There is advice for treating skin problems, teeth, eyes and other organs.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations and fix broken (organs - muscles - bones).
- There is advice for treating (skin - lung - heart) problems in the Ebers Papyrus.

B Answer these questions:

- What are the two old texts? ►
- What is the Edwin Smith Papyrus about? ►
- What does the Ebers Papyrus talk about? ►
- Give a suitable title to the text. ►

4 Read, order, and write:

- ancient Egypt - Doctors - in - operations - could - do.

►

- help - can - Aloe - burns - with.

►

- some - infections - can - better - Honey - make.

►

- Egyptians - Ancient - used - in - medicine - herbs.

►

Lesson 8

Reading: Getting to hospital

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



flying doctors

أطباء طائرون



helicopter

طائرة هليكوبتر



airplane

طائرة



pilot

طيار



emergency

حالة طوارئ



paramedics

مسعفون



first aid

الإسعافات الأولية



medical help

مساعدة طبية



medical equipment

معدات طبية



ambulance

سيارة الإسعاف



service

خدمة



save lives

تنقذ الأرواح

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

enormous country

دولة ضخمة

a six-hour drive

قيادة لمدة 6 ساعات

important

هام - مهم

countryside

الريف

population

السكان - تعداد السكان

one third

ثلث

areas

مناطق

as well as

علاوة على - بالإضافة إلى

town

بلدة - مدينة صغيرة

coast

ساحل

are called

تُسمى - تُدعى

much quicker

أسرع بكثير - بسرعة أكبر

Prepositions**get to**

يصل إلى

most of ...

معظم ...

traveling by road

السفر برّاً

all over Australia

في كل أنحاء أستراليا

Enrich your knowledge**Vocabulary Study****flying doctors**

: doctors who fly in a helicopter to give quick medical help to people in need

emergency

: a serious, unexpected, and often dangerous situation requiring immediate action

first aid

: help given to a sick or injured person until full medical treatment is available

medical equipment

: items that are related to the treatment of illness and injuries

paramedics

: people trained to give emergency medical care to people who are injured or ill

Conjugation of Verbs**Regular verbs****أفعال منتظمة**

Present		Past	PP
call	يُدعى - يُسمّى	called	called
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
live	يعيش	lived	lived
save	ينقذ	saved	saved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get to	يصل إلى	got to	got to
drive	يقود مَرْكَبَة	drove	driven
bring	يُحضِر - يجلب	brought	brought
go	يذهب	went	gone
fly	يطير - يسافر جَوًّا	flew	flown
do	يؤدي - يفعل	did	done



Read and learn

Who are flying doctors?

Flying doctors الأطباء الطائرون



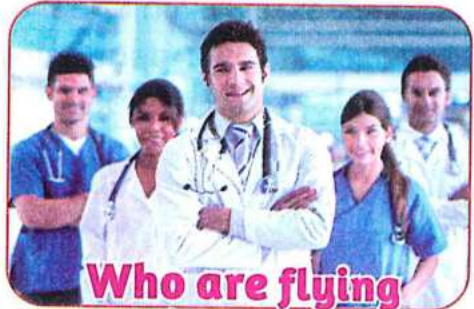
When you are sick, you can go to hospital in a car. In an emergency, you can go in an ambulance. The people who drive **ambulances** are called **paramedics**. They can give you first aid very quickly.



Some countries also use

helicopters to get people to hospital in

an emergency. These are very important and can save lives.



Who are flying doctors?

عندما تكون مريضاً، يمكنك الذهاب إلى المستشفى في سيارة. في حالة الطوارئ، يمكنك الذهاب في سيارة إسعاف. يُطلق على الأشخاص الذين يقودون سيارات الإسعاف اسم المسعفين. يمكنهم إعطاؤك الإسعافات الأولية بسرعة كبيرة. تستخدم بعض البلدان أيضاً طائرات الهليكوبتر لنقل الأشخاص إلى المستشفى في حالة الطوارئ. هذه الطريقة مهمة للغاية ويمكن أن تنقذ الأرواح.

Australia is an enormous country – 7.69 million square kilometers. It has a population of about 25 million people.

Most of the people live near the coast around the country. About one third live in the countryside, in areas that are a long way from towns and hospitals – sometimes about a six-hour drive.

What happens when you are sick?

You can call the flying doctors!



أستراليا بلد ضخم تبلغ مساحته 7,69 مليون كيلو متر مربع. ويبلغ عدد سكانها حوالي 25

مليون نسمة. يعيش معظم السكان بالقرب من الساحل في جميع أنحاء البلاد. ويعيش حوالي ثلث السكان في الريف، في مناطق بعيدة عن المدن والمستشفيات - مسافة ست ساعات بالسيارة في بعض الأحيان. ماذا يحدث عندما تكون مريضاً؟ يمكنك استدعاء الأطباء الطائرين!



The Royal Flying Doctor Service brings medical help to people all over Australia. The flying doctors are pilots as well as doctors. They

can help with emergencies of injuries where they happen, and they can fly people to hospital. It is much quicker than traveling by road. The Australian flying doctor service has 77 airplanes. There is a lot of medical equipment inside, and they can be used as hospitals. Doctors can even do operations inside the planes!

خدمة الأطباء الملكيون الطائرون (خدمة إسعافات في أستراليا) تقدم المساعدة الطبية للناس في جميع أنحاء أستراليا. الأطباء الطائرون هم طيارون بالإضافة إلي كونهم أطباء. يمكنهم المساعدة في حالات الطوارئ والإصابات حيثما تحدث، ويمكنهم نقل الأشخاص إلى المستشفى بالطائرة، وهي وسيلة نقل أسرع بكثير من التنقل عن طريق البر. تضم خدمة الطبيب الطائر الأسترالية 77 طائرة. وتحتوي تلك الطائرات على الكثير من المعدات الطبية بداخلها ويمكن استخدامها كمستشفيات. حتى أنه يمكن للأطباء إجراء عمليات جراحية داخل الطائرات!

Exercises on Lesson 8



Student's Book

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

quickly - helicopters - emergency - paramedics - airplanes

When you are sick, you should go to the hospital. In an ①, you can go to hospital in an ambulance. The people who drive ambulances are called ② and they can give you first aid. Lots of countries use ③ to get people to hospital quickly. In Australia, they use ④ to help with emergencies.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

first-aid - helicopters - equipment - ambulance - paramedics

Here are some steps to take when there is an emergency. In an emergency, an ① takes you to hospital. Paramedics drive ambulances and they can give you ② There is a lot of medical ③ inside. In some countries, there are ④ that can fly you to hospital very quickly.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

In an emergency, an ambulance takes you to the hospital. Paramedics drive ambulances, and they can give you first aid. In some countries, there are helicopters that can fly you to a hospital very quickly. Australia is such a big country that many people live hundreds of kilometers away from the nearest hospital. So, there are some doctors there, who can fly small planes, called 'flying doctors.' There are 77 airplanes in the Australian Flying Doctor Service. The planes are like small flying hospitals. They carry lots of medical equipment, and the doctors can do operations inside them.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Paramedics drive (airplanes - helicopters - ambulances), and they can give you first aid.
2. The planes carry lots of medical (equipment - kilometers - airplanes), and the doctors can do operations inside them.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why does Australia have flying doctors?

▶

4. How many airplanes are there in the Australian Flying Doctor Service?

▶

5. What is the opposite of the underlined word "nearest"?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read, order, and write:

1. the - flying - are - Who - doctors?

▶ ?

2. an - enormous - is - country - Australia.

▶

3. when - What - happens - sick - you - are?

▶ ?

4. quickly - surgery - need - you - if - happens - What?

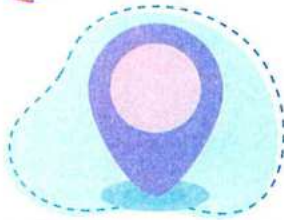
▶ ?

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



h _ _ _



h _ _ _



pl _ _ _



pl _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

disease - accident - treatment - hurts - feel

Do you know what a hospital is? A hospital is a place where people can go for ① Sometimes people have a ② or infection that makes them ill. Sometimes they have an injury because of an ③ At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. They might ask questions to find out what is wrong with you. They need to know what ④ or how you feel.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Some things that ancient Egyptians believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine. For example, they used herbs to treat some diseases, and we know today that these can help — mint is good for the digestive system, and aloe can help with burns. They also used honey to treat infections and skin problems. With science today, we know that honey can make some infections better.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. (Mint - Aloe - Honey) can help with burns.
2. Ancient Egyptians used (aloe - herbs - honey) to treat skin problems.

B Answer these questions:

3. What did ancient Egyptians use herbs for?

4. What is mint good for? ▶
5. What does science show us today? ▶
6. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. There were plans for a vehicle ○
2. Nesma found a drawing ○

(B)

- ☐ a) of a small toy car.
- ☐ b) that used a compass to navigate.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Nesma was learning about magnets in science lessons at school. ()
4. Nesma didn't show Laila her plans. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. You get better if you (will have - has - have) a rest and take the medicine.
2. You (must - mustn't - can) forget to do your homework.
3. If he eats healthy food, he (feel - feels - doesn't feel) better.
4. You must (help - helping - helps) people in an emergency.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. Paramedics - ambulances - drive - and - give - first aid. ▶
2. you - or - an accident - ever - Have - surgery - had? ▶ ?

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The doctor's job"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- important - save lives - hospital

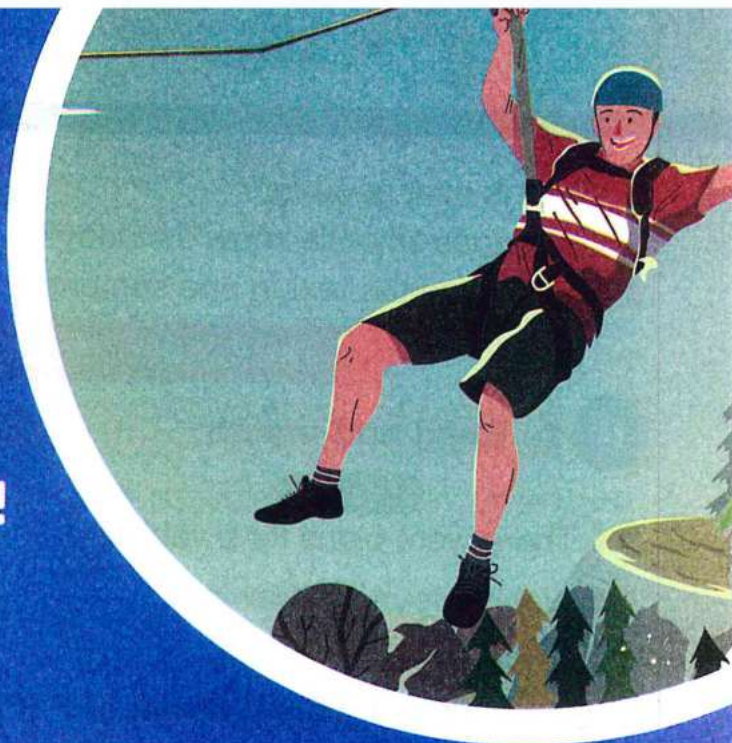


Theme (4)
Communication

Unit 10

We love adventure!

نحن نحب المغامرة!



Objectives

Vocabulary	Magnetism: attract, compass, magnet, magnetic field, navigate, needle, pole, repel Forces: contact force, friction, magnetism, pull, push Types of motion: balance, bounce, drop, hit, land, roll
Language	- If an object is magnetic, a magnet will pick it up. - If I push the pencil, will the ruler move? - Will the ball drop if I move this?
Reading	A text about different kinds of forces: friction, contact
Phonics	'g' as 'j': energy, gentle, bandage
Life skills	Collaboration - Participation - Creativity
Values	Independence - Curiosity Appreciation of science
Issues and challenges	Technological awareness
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	Science: Frictions experiment Use of magnets in modern life

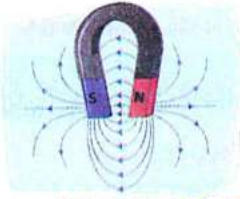
Lessons 1-2 Digital technology & How to find directions

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



magnet

مغناطيس



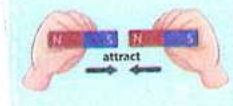
magnetic field

المجال المغناطيسي



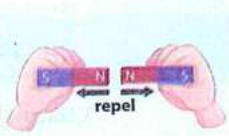
poles

قطبي (أقطاب) المغناطيس



attract

يجذب



repel

يصد - يُبعد - يتنافر



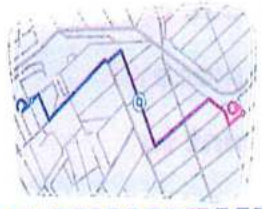
compass

بوصلة



needle

إبرة



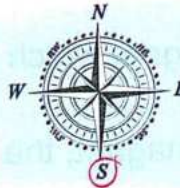
navigate

يتنقل



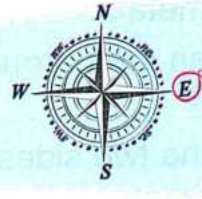
north

الشمال



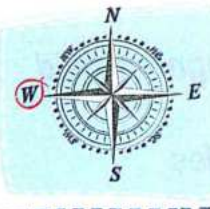
south

الجنوب



east

الشرق



west

الغرب



North Pole

القطب الشمالي



South Pole

القطب الجنوبي



map

خريطة



direction

اتجاه

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

adventure	مغامرة	situations	مواقف
pull objects	تجذب الأشياء	path	طريق - ممر
metal	معدن	find our way	نجد طريقنا
arrow	سهم	useful	مفيد - نافع
desert	صحراء	invisible	غير مرئي
piece	قطعة	way	طريق

Prepositions

close to	قريب من	the area around	المنطقة المحيطة
a piece of	قطعة من	look for	يبحث عن
point to	يشير إلى	where to go	أين نذهب
towards	تجاه	in the north	في الشمال

Vocabulary Study



Activity Book

magnet	: a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals
magnetic field	: an area around a magnet which pulls objects towards it
poles	: the two sides of the magnet; the north and south
attract	: when the magnet pulls objects towards it
repel	: to push something away
compass	: helps you navigate, e.g. know which way to go
needle	: a piece of metal with a point at one end inside the compass that points to the north
navigate	: plan and direct the route of a ship, aircraft, or other form of transportation
North Pole	: the most northern point on the surface of the Earth
South Pole	: the most southern point on the surface of the Earth

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
attract يجذب	attracted	attracted
pull يسحب - يجر	pulled	pulled
need يحتاج	needed	needed
walk يمشي	walked	walked
point to يشير إلى	pointed to	pointed to
look for يبحث عن شيء	looked for	looked for
use يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used
love يحب	loved	loved

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
read يقرأ	read	read
find يجد	found	found
go يذهب	went	gone
show يوضح - يبين	showed	shown
hide يخفي - يختبئ	hid	hidden
say يقول	said	said



Read and learn

We love adventure!



Why do the children need a compass?

لماذا يحتاج الأطفال إلى بوصلة؟

1

Let's go and look for toys that Mrs Mona hid in the park. She said they are in the north.

هيا نذهب ونبحث عن الألعاب التي أخفتها الأستاذة منى في الحديقة. لقد قالت إنها في اتجاه الشمال.

3

Yes, and we'll need a compass, too.

نعم، وسنحتاج إلى بوصلة، أيضًا.

4

Why will we need a compass?

لماذا سنحتاج إلى بوصلة؟

2

Yes! I love adventure. If we walk a long way, we'll need a map.

نعم! أحب المغامرة. إذا كنا سنمشي طريقًا طويلًا، فسنحتاج إلى خريطة.

5

To show us where to go!

لتبين لنا إلى أين نتجه!

Why is it useful to use a compass?

لماذا يُعدُّ من المفيد أن نستخدم بوصلة؟

1

You can use a map and a compass if you don't know where the path is.

يمكنك استخدام خريطة وبوصلة لو لم تكن تعرف أين هو الطريق.

2

It is useful to use a compass because it can help us to navigate.

إنه من المفيد استخدام البوصلة لأنها يمكن أن تساعدنا على التنقل.

3

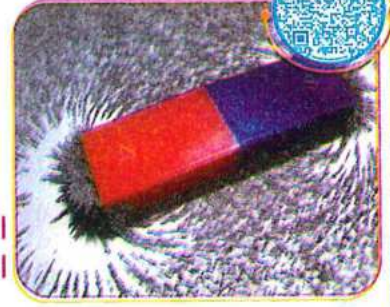
A compass helps us to find our way in the desert.

تساعدنا البوصلة أن نجد طريقنا في الصحراء.

Magnets أحجار المغناطيس

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south pole.

المغناطيس هو قطعة من المعدن تستطيع أن تجذب أو تبعد بعض المعادن الأخرى. المغناطيس له قطب شمالي وقطب جنوبي.



When the north pole of one magnet is close to the south pole of another magnet, they attract. The north pole of a magnet repels the north pole of another magnet, and the south pole of a magnet repels the south pole of another magnet.

عندما يكون القطب الشمالي لمغناطيس قريبًا من القطب الجنوبي لمغناطيس آخر، فإنهما يجذبان لبعضهما. يتنافر القطب الشمالي لمغناطيس مع القطب الشمالي لمغناطيس آخر، ويتنافر القطب الجنوبي لمغناطيس مع القطب الجنوبي لمغناطيس آخر.

A magnetic field is an area around a magnet which can pull objects towards it. We can't see this — it is invisible.

المجال المغناطيسي هو منطقة حول المغناطيس يمكن أن تسحب الأشياء نحوه. لا يمكننا رؤية هذا — إنه غير مرئي.

A compass can help you navigate. The needle in a compass is a magnet. It always points to the north.

يمكن أن تساعدك البوصلة على التنقل. الإبرة الموجودة في البوصلة هي عبارة عن مغناطيس، ويشير دائمًا إلى اتجاه الشمال.



A compass can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic needle which will point to the magnetic North Pole.

يمكن للبوصلة أن تبين لك اتجاه الشمال. فهي تحتوي على إبرة مغناطيسية تشير إلى القطب الشمالي المغناطيسي.

A map always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you read a map to show you where to go.

تحتوي الخريطة دائماً على سهم يُبَيِّن اتجاه الشمال، ويمكنك استخدام ذلك عندما تقرأ خريطة ليوضح لك إلى أين تتجه.

Exercises on Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

magnet - pole - north - needle - navigate

A compass helps us to find our way in the desert. A compass can help you **1** The **2** in a compass is a **3** It always points to the **4**

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

compass - metal - pole - south - attract

Do you know what a magnet is? A magnet is a piece of **1** that can **2** or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north **3** and a **4** pole.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

towards - magnetic field - repels - magnet - attract

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel other metals. When the north pole of one magnet is close to the south pole of another magnet, they **1** The north pole of a magnet **2** the north pole of another magnet, and the south pole of a magnet repels the south pole of another magnet. A **3** is an area around a magnet which can pull objects **4** it.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A compass can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic needle which will point to the magnetic North Pole. A map always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you read a map to show you where to go.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A compass has a magnetic (direction - needle - map).
2. The arrow on the map always shows the direction of (south - west - north).

B Answer these questions:

3. What can a compass show us? ►
4. How can we read a map? ►
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ►
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ►

5 Read, order, and write:

1. a - magnetic - has - A compass - needle. ►
2. metal - of - a - piece - is - A magnet. ►
3. helps - A - compass - navigate - you. ►
4. can - Magnets - or repel - attract - other - metals. ►
5. need - Why - a - compass - will - we? ►

6 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"The magnet"

► Ideas to help you:

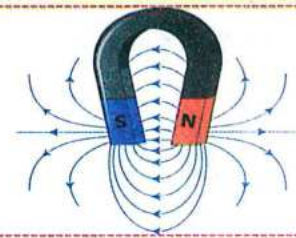
two poles - attract - repel

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 3-4-5 Language use & Types of motion

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**bounce**

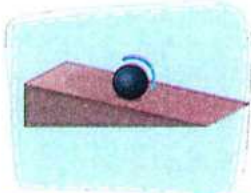
يتنطط

**balance**

يتوازن

**drop**

يُسقط

**roll**

يتدحرج

**hit**

يضرب

**land**

ينزل على الأرض - يهبط

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

metal board

لوحة معدنية

handle

مقبض

shape

شكل

liquid

سائل

put together

تضع سوياً

string

خيط

cold

بردان

bell

جرس

fridge

ثلاجة

marble

بليّة - كرة زجاجية

Prepositions

go out

يخرج

turn on

يشغل جهاز

made of

مصنوع من

pick up

يلتقط

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

bounce	: to move up and down on a soft surface
balance	: to keep in a steady position so that you do not fall
roll	: to move by turning over and over, or making something move this way
land (v)	: to fall or move down onto something after moving through the air
handle	: the part by which a thing is held, carried, or controlled
string	: material consisting of threads of cotton or other material twisted together to form a thin length

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
drop	يُسْقِط	dropped	dropped
roll	يتدحرج	rolled	rolled
land	ينزل على الأرض - يهبط	landed	landed
miss the bus	يفوته الأتوبيس	missed the bus	missed the bus
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	mixed
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
bounce	يتنطط	bounced	bounced
balance	يتوازن	balanced	balanced
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
put	يضع	put	put
throw	يرمي - يقذف	threw	thrown
make a sound	يُحدث صوتًا	made a sound	made a sound
go out	يخرج	went out	gone out
get wet	يبتل	got wet	got wet
get lost	يتوه - يضل الطريق	got lost	got lost
stick	يلتصق	stuck	stuck

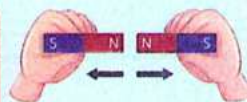


Read and learn

Conditionals

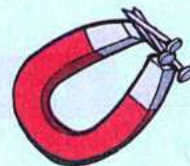
- 1 If you put two north poles together, **they will repel** each other.

إذا وضعت قطبين شماليين معًا، فسوف يتنافران.



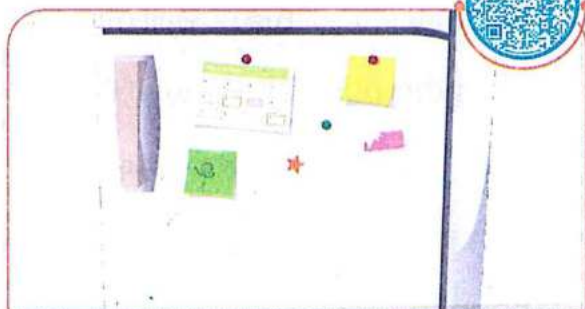
- 2 If an **object** is made of metal, a magnet will **pick it up**.

إذا كان جسم ما مصنوعًا من المعدن، فسوف يلتقطه المغناطيس.



If you watch this video, you will learn about magnets.

إذا شاهدت هذا الفيديو، فسوف تتعلم عن المغناطيسات.



If you put a magnet on a metal board, it will stick.

إذا وضعت مغناطيسًا على لوح معدني، فإنه سوف يلتصق به.





If she touches the shape, the magnet will pick it up.

إذا لمَسَتِ الشكل فسوف يلتقطه المغناطيس.



If he doesn't go that way, he'll get lost.

إذا لم يذهب في هذا الاتجاه، سوف يضل الطريق.

Grammar Study



The First Conditional [If] الحالة الأولى

If + present simple → future simple

If + مضارع بسيط → will + المصدر

- ▶ If an object **is** made of metal, a magnet **will** pick it up.
- ▶ If you **don't wear** a jacket, you'll be cold.
- ▶ If he **takes** an umbrella, he **won't** get wet.

■ We use the first conditional to describe something, which will probably happen in the present or in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الأولى [If] للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل.

- Will the water be cold **if** we put it in the fridge? ▶ Yes, it will.
- Will you watch TV **if** you don't finish your homework? ▶ No, I won't.
- What will you do **if** you win? ▶ I will have a party.

لاحظ:

will = 'll will not = **won't** الاختصارات التالية:



Term 2

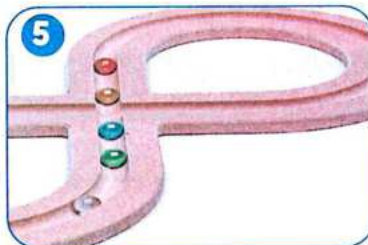
Exercises on Lessons 3 4 5

1 Write the correct word under each picture:



Student's Book

drop - roll - bounce - balance - hit - land



2 Read and match (A) with (B):



Student's Book

(A)

(B)

1. If you take an umbrella,

a) you'll be hungry.

2. If you don't wear a jacket,

b) we'll walk to school.

3. If you go out in the rain,

c) I'll say hello.

4. If we miss our bus,

d) you'll get wet.

5. If I see my cousin,

e) you'll be cold.

6. If you don't eat breakfast,

f) you won't get wet.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you watch this video, you (learns - learned - will learn) about sea animals.
2. If you (put - puts - will put) a magnet on a metal board, it will stick.
3. If she touches the shape, the magnet (will pick - pick - picked) it up.
4. If he (don't go - doesn't go - will not go) that way, he'll get lost.
5. What will happen if we (move - moves - moved) the book?
6. If I drop the pencil, what will it (do - did - does)?
7. Where will the ball (go - going - goes) if I throw it?
8. If I (pulled - pulls - pull) the string, will the bell make a sound?
9. If I pull on the door handle, (will - did - does) I open it? ► Yes, you will.
10. If I push the white ball, will it (move - moves - moving)?
11. Will the ball (drop - dropped - drops) if I move this?
12. If he (use - will use - uses) a compass, will he get lost?
13. If we put a magnet here, the metal ball (move - moving - will move).
14. Will the water (is - are - be) cold if we put it in the fridge?
15. What (does - will - are) we see if we mix these liquids?

4 Read, order, and write:

1. my cousin, - I - see - **if** - say hello - I'll.

►

2. you - **Can** - make - roll - a - marble?

► ?

3. you - **if** - breakfast, - don't eat - be hungry - you'll.

►

Lesson 6

Reading: Forces



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Forces - Pushes and Pulls



contact forces
قوى التلامس



push force
قوة الدفع



pull force
قوة الجر (السحب)



friction
احتكاك



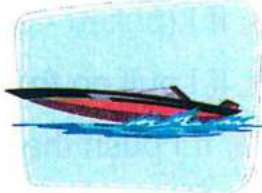
magnetism
القوة المغناطيسية



cart
عربة تسير بالدفع أو الجر



movement
حركة



speed
سرعة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

handle	مقبض	move forwards	يتحرك للأمام
type	نمط - شكل	bring	يُحضِر
object	شيء	store	متجر - محل
quicker	أسرع	change (n) (v)	تَغْيِير - يُغَيِّر
move away	يتحرك بعيداً	direction	اتجاه
sound	صوت شيء	another	آخر
slow down	تبطيء	liquid	سائل

Vocabulary Study



Student's Book

force	: strength or energy that can make things move
contact forces	: forces resulting in pushing, pulling or friction
magnetism	: a type of force or the power that a magnet has to attract things
push	: moves an object away or forwards
pull	: brings something towards you
friction	: this happens when two objects have to touch each other for the movement to happen
handle	: the part by which a thing is held, carried, or controlled
cart	: an open vehicle with two or four wheels like the one in the supermarket
speed	: the rate at which someone or something can move
movement	: an act of changing in the place, location or position

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
stop	يوقف - يتوقف	stopped	stopped
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغيَّر	changed	changed
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
call	يدعي - يُسَمِّي	called	called
start	يبدأ	started	started
move away	يتحرك بعيداً	moved away	moved away
slow down	يُبطِئ	slowed down	slowed down
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed
pull	يجر - يسحب	pulled	pulled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
see	يرى	saw	seen
find	يجد	found	found



Read and learn



Forces القوى

A force is something that can make things move. **Magnetism** is a type of force, but there are others:

القوة هي شيء يمكن أن يجعل الأشياء تتحرك. المغناطيسية هي نوع من أنواع القوة، ولكن يوجد أنواع أخرى:

Push: this moves an object away or forwards - you can push a **cart** when you go to the store.

قوة الدفع: تُحرّك هذه القوة الشيء بعيداً أو للأمام - تستطيع أن تدفع عربة عندما تذهب إلى المتجر.



Pull: this brings something towards you - you can pull on a door **handle** to open a door.

قوة الجرّ (السحب): تجلب هذه القوة شيئاً ما تجاهك - تستطيع أن تسحب مقبض الباب لفتح الباب.

Friction: when one object touches another object as it moves, there is a force between them. This is called **friction**. It can slow down the object that is moving.

قوة الاحتكاك: عندما يتلامس شيئين أثناء تحرك أحدهما، تحدث قوة بينهما. وتسمى هذه القوة بقوة الاحتكاك. تستطيع هذه القوة أن تبطئ الشيء المتحرك.



Pushing, pulling and friction are **contact forces**. The two objects have to touch each other for the movement to happen. The contact can stop, start, or change the speed or direction of the movement.

الدفع والسحب والاحتكاك هي قوى التلامس. يجب أن يتلامس الشيئين معاً لتحديث حركة. هذا التلامس يمكن أن يُوقِف أو يبدأ أو يغير سرعة أو اتجاه الحركة.

1



If I bush the white ball, will the red ball move?

إذا دفعت الكرة البيضاء، فهل ستتحرك الكرة الحمراء؟

2

Will the ball drop if I move this?

هل ستسقط الكرة إذا حركت هذا؟



3



If we use a compass, will we get lost?

إذا استخدمنا بوصلة، هل سنضل الطريق؟

4

If we put a magnet here, will the metal ball move?

إذا وضعنا مغناطيسًا هنا، فهل ستتحرك الكرة المعدنية؟



5



Will the water be cold if we put it in the fridge?

هل سيكون الماء باردًا إذا وضعناه في الثلاجة؟

6

What will we see if we mix these liquids?

ماذا سنرى إذا خلطنا هذه السوائل؟



Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

objects - movement - speed - forces - direction

Friction can slow down the object that is moving. Pushing, pulling and friction are contact ① The two ② have to touch each other for the ③ to happen. The contact can stop, start, or change the ④ or direction of the movement .

2 Read, order, and write:

1. force - of - a - type - is - **Magnetism**.

▶

2. and - **Pushing** - pulling - contact - forces - are.

▶

3. a door - pull - on - can - **You** - handle.

▶

4. can - **You** - a - cart - push.

▶

5. slow - down - can - **Friction** - objects.

▶

6. force - **A** - pull - towards - something - brings - you.

▶

7. see - **What** - will we - if - these liquids - we mix?

▶ ?

Lessons 7-8

Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Science: Friction



Phonics: The (g) as (j) sounds:



(g)

The letter (g) make the sound /dʒ/



change
يُغَيِّر - تَغْيِير



energy
طاقة



bandage
ضمادة



village
قرية



danger
خطر



giraffe
زرافة



Listen and say



Danger! There's a **giraffe** in the **village**!



Song Time

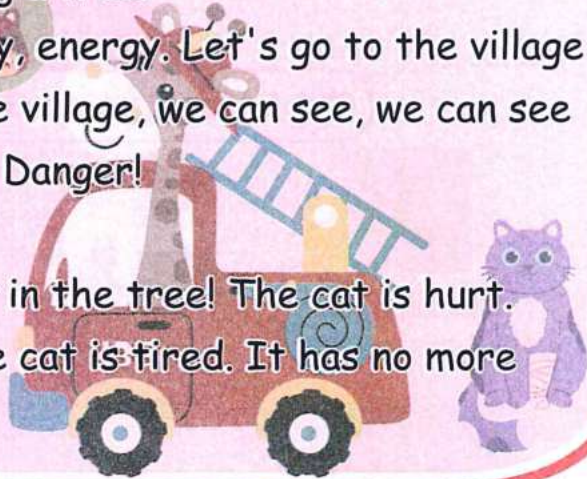


We have so much energy, energy. Let's go to the village for an adventure! In the village, we can see, we can see A cat. Look, it's climbing a tree!

We have so much energy, energy. Let's go to the village for an adventure! In the village, we can see, we can see A cat in a tree! Danger! Danger!

Can you see?

A giraffe saved the cat in the tree! The cat is hurt. It needs a bandage. The cat is tired. It has no more energy!



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



do an experiment

يُجري تجربة معملية



ramp

مُنحدر



surface

سطح



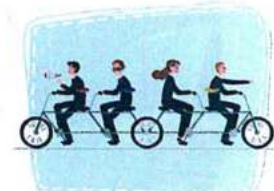
measure

يقيس



distance

مسافة



opposite direction

الاتجاه المضاد (المُعاكس)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Let's go	هيا نذهب	on the ground	على الأرض
hurt (adj)	مصابة - مجروحة	eraser	ممحاة - أستيكة
tired	متعب - مجهد	marks	علامات
glue	صمغ	messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب
sand	رمل	slowly	ببطء
smooth	ناعم - أملس	quickly	بسرعة
paint	طلاء - دهان	How far?	إلى أي مدى؟

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

experiment	: a scientific test done to find out or prove something
ramp	: a slope to connect two places that are at different levels
measure	: to find out the size, length or amount of something
distance	: an amount of space between two things or people
opposite direction	: the direction on the other side
surface	: the outside part or layer of something
energy	: power or strength
change (v)	: to make someone or something different
danger	: the possibility of suffering harm or injury
movement	: an act of changing in the place, location or position

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
measure	يقيس	measured	measured
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغيّر	changed	changed
save	يوفر - ينقذ	saved	saved
use	يستخدم	used	used
rub out	يمحو - يزيل	rubbed out	rubbed out
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
work	يعمل	worked	worked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
do - does	يؤدي - يفعل	did	done
put	يضع	put	put
run	يجري	ran	run
see	يرى	saw	seen
make	يصنع	made	made



Read and learn

Friction experiment تجربة الاحتكاك



Friction is a contact force between two surfaces. We use it every day, from when we put our foot on the ground to run, to when we use an eraser to rub out pencil marks.

الاحتكاك هو قوة تلامس بين سطحين. نحن نستخدمه كل يوم، من أول وضعنا لقدمنا على الأرض للركض، إلى استخدامنا لممحاة لنمحو علامات القلم الرصاص.

We can do an experiment to see how friction works.

نستطيع أن نجري تجربة لنرى كيف يعمل الاحتكاك.

Roll a toy car down a ramp. Measure how far it travels.

لف سيارة لعبة لتنزل إلى أسفل منحدر. قُم بقياس المسافة التي تحركتها.



What will happen if we change the ramp? We can put glue and sand on it. If we roll the car down the ramp again, will the distance change?

ما الذي سوف يحدث لو غيرنا المنحدر؟ يمكننا وضع صمغ ورمل عليه. لو قمنا بلف السيارة اللعبة لتنزل إلى أسفل المنحدر مرة أخرى، هل ستتغير المسافة؟

Friction works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more **slowly**.

يعمل الاحتكاك في الاتجاه المعاكس للطريقة التي يتحرك بها الجسم، لذا فهو يجعل الأشياء تتحرك بشكل أبطأ.

Exercises on Lessons 7 8

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



chan _ e



ener _ y



banda _ e



villa _ e



dan _ er



_ iraffe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Friction - Measure - distance - experiment - ramp

We can do an experiment to see how friction works. Roll a toy car down a ① ② how far it travels. We can put glue and sand on it. If we roll the car down the ramp again, will the ③ change? ④ works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more slowly.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Friction is a contact force between two surfaces. We use it every day, from when we put our foot on the ground to run, to when we use an eraser to rub out pencil marks. Friction works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more slowly.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Friction is a force between two (poles - directions - surfaces).
2. Friction makes things move more (quickly - slowly - fast).

B Answer these questions:

3. When do we use friction?

▶

4. What do we use an eraser for?

▶

5. Where does friction work?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read, order, and write:

1. in - a - giraffe - **There's** - village - the!

▶ !

2. energy - much - so - have - **We**.

▶

3. did - **How** - do - you - experiment - your?

▶ ?

4. surfaces - **Friction** - contact force - is - a - two - between.

▶

5. the ramp - happen - **What** - if we - will - change?

▶ ?

6. friction - works - **We** - do experiments - to see - how.

▶



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**farming**

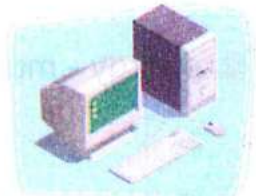
الزراعة

**factories**

مصانع

**transportation**

النقل

**computer**

حاسوب (كمبيوتر)

**materials**

مواد خام

**recycling**

إعادة تدوير

**sort out**

يفرز - يصف

**store (v)**

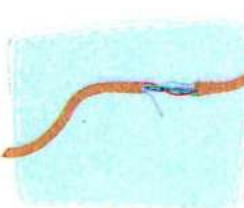
يخزن

**medicine**

الطب

**information**

معلومات

**wire**

سلك

**nails**

مسامير

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

organs

أعضاء الجسم

stomach

معدة

swallow

يلع - يبتلع

bits of metal

أجزاء من المعدن

save lives

تنقذ أرواح

fields

حقول

narrow

ضيق

train system

نظام القطارات

human hair

شعر الإنسان

is lifted

تُرفع

the right place	المكان الصحيح	closed	مغلق
area	منطقة	MRI scan	التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي
x-ray	الأشعة السينية	digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

farming	: the activity of growing crops and raising livestock
factories	: buildings where goods are manufactured chiefly by machines
transportation	: the action of transporting someone or something or the process of being transported
medicine	: the science or practice of the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of disease
wire	: flexible metal that's shaped like thick thread
nails	: small metal spikes with a flat head
recycling	: the activity of changing waste materials into new materials and objects
sort out	: to arrange in groups; separate according to type, class, etc
materials	: the matter from which a thing is or can be made
store (v)	: to keep something for future use
information	: facts provided or learned about something or someone

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
swallow	يبلع - يبتلع	swallowed	swallowed
lift	يرفع	lifted	lifted
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	stayed
store	يخزن	stored	stored

Unit 10

Present		Past	PP
damage	يتلف - يدمر	damaged	damaged
close	يغلق	closed	closed
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
keep	يُبقى	kept	kept
take pictures	تلتقط صورًا	took pictures	taken pictures
give	تعطي	gave	given
eat	تأكل	ate	eaten



Read and learn

Are magnets useful in hospitals?



Uses of magnets استخدامات أحجار المغناطيس

Magnets are useful at home and at school. We can stick photos to magnetic surfaces, or use magnets to keep doors closed. But they are important in lots of other ways too.

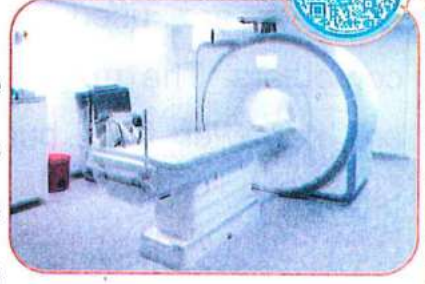
أحجار المغناطيسات مفيدة في المنزل والمدرسة. يمكننا لصق الصور على الأسطح المغناطيسية، أن نستخدم أحجار المغناطيسات لنبقي الأبواب مغلقة. لكنها مهمة في الكثير من النواحي الأخرى أيضًا.

Medicine

مجال الطب



In hospitals, an **MRI scan (magnetic resonance imaging)** uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organs inside our bodies. An **X-ray** can take pictures of bones, but an MRI scan can give doctors more information. The scans are very useful and save many lives.



في المستشفيات، يستخدم فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي مجالاً مغناطيسياً لعمل صور لأعضاء داخل أجسامنا. الأشعة السينية يمكنها التقاط صور للعظام، لكن فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي يمكن أن يمنح الأطباء مزيداً من المعلومات. إن تلك الفحوصات مفيدة للغاية وتُنقذ العديد من الأرواح.

Farming

الزراعة

We know that cows eat grass, but sometimes they can eat bits of metal that are on the ground in fields, such as **nails** or bits of **wire**. Farmers give cows a magnet to swallow. The magnet stays inside the cow's stomach and attracts all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's digestive system.

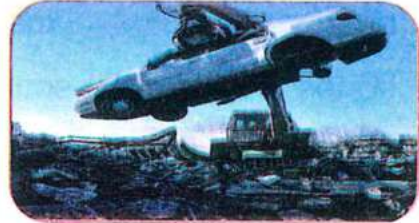


نحن نعلم أن الأبقار تأكل العشب، لكن في بعض الأحيان يمكنها أن تأكل قطعاً من المعدن تكون على الأرض في الحقول، مثل المسامير أو قطع من الأسلاك. يعطي المزارعون الأبقار مغناطيساً لتبتلعها. يبقى المغناطيس داخل معدة البقرة ويجذب كل الأشياء المعدنية. هذا يمنع الأشياء المعدنية من إتلاف الجهاز الهضمي للبقرة.

Factories

المصانع

Big magnets can sort out materials for recycling, or even move old cars.



تستطيع المغناطيسات الكبيرة أن تفرز المواد من أجل إعادة تدويرها، أو حتى نقل السيارات القديمة.

Computers أجهزة الحاسوب

Magnets are used to store information in computers. The magnetic areas used for this are narrower than human hair!

تستخدم المغناطيسات لتخزين المعلومات في أجهزة الكمبيوتر. المناطق المغناطيسية المستخدمة لهذا

الغرض تكون أرفع من شعر الإنسان!



Transportation المواصلات

Some of the most modern train systems use magnets. The train is lifted off the ground, so it has less friction. The magnet keeps it in the right place. The train can travel very quickly!

تستخدم بعض أحدث أنظمة القطارات المغناطيسات. يرتفع القطار عن الأرض، لذلك يكون الاحتكاك أقل. ولذلك فالمغناطيس يبقيه في المكان المناسب. يمكن للقطار السفر بسرعة كبيرة جدًا!



Exercises on Lesson 9

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lives - X-ray - information - MRI - organs

Magnets are very useful. In hospitals, an ① scan (magnetic resonance imaging) uses a magnetic field to make pictures of ② inside our bodies. An X-ray can take pictures of bones, but an MRI scan can give doctors more ③ The scans are very useful and save many ④

2 Read, order, and write:

1. magnets - in - useful - hospitals - **Are**?

► ?

2. can - **An X-ray** - take - bones - pictures - of.

►

3. can - give - doctors - **An MRI scan** - information - more.

►

4. travel - **The** - train - quickly - can - very!

► !

3 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"Magnets are useful"

► Ideas to help you: **at home - for computers - for transportation**



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



dan _ er



_ iraffe



banda _ e



villa _ e

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

pole - direction - map - compass - magnetic

A compass helps us to find our way in the desert. A ① can show you which direction is north. It has a ② needle which will point to the magnetic North Pole. A map always has an arrow that shows the ③ of north. You can use this when you read a ④ to show you where to go.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south pole. When the north pole of one magnet is close to the south pole of another magnet, they attract. The north pole of a magnet repels the north pole of another magnet, and the south pole of a magnet repels the south pole of another magnet. A magnetic field is an area around a magnet which can pull objects towards it. We can't see this — it is invisible.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Magnets have a north pole and a (west - east - south) pole.
- A magnetic field is (visible - invisible - seen).

B Answer these questions:

- What can a magnet do?

4. What is a magnetic field? ►
5. What can a magnetic field do? ►
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ►

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. The two girls made
2. There were lots of children

(B)

- ☐ a) from schools around the city.
- ☐ b) a frame for the car to travel on.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Laila will get the wood for the model car. ()
4. The car has a big spring inside it. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. If an object is made of metal, a magnet (pick - picked - will pick) it up.
2. Will this ball roll down the slope if she (push - pushes - will push) it?
3. If you go to bed late, you (will get up - gets up - won't get up) early.
4. Where (will - have - are) you go if you finish your work early?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. a - pencil - you - make - Can - bounce? ►
2. in computers - Magnets - used - are - information - to store. ►

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The things you use while camping outside"

► Ideas to help you:

compass - magnet - map

.....

.....

.....

.....



Theme (4)
Communication

Unit 11

Keep in touch
ابق على اتصال



Objectives

Vocabulary	Technology and communication: cell phone, email, laptop, letter, radio, telegraph, telephone, television, typewriter, World Wide Web Parts of a computer: CPU, hard drive, keyboard, memory, monitor, mouse, printer, storage
Language	- Billions of emails are sent every day. - Is the World Wide Web used by lots of people? Yes, it is! - The first email was sent in 1971.
Reading	A text about old and modern types of transportation; / a text and table about the pros and cons of different types of transportation.
Phonics	aw, au, or: audio message, Morse Code, draw
Life skills	Critical thinking - Problem-solving - Communication
Values	Curiosity - Appreciation of science
Issues and challenges	Technological awareness Sustainable development
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	ICT: Communication now and in the past

Lesson 1 Communication now and in the past

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Communication in the past



telegraph machine
آلة التلغراف



radio
راديو



television
تلفاز (تلفزيون)



typewriter
آلة كاتبة



telephone
هاتف (تليفون)



letter
خطاب

Communication now



cell phone
هاتف نقال



laptop
كمبيوتر محمول (لاب توب)



email
بريد إلكتروني



World Wide Web
شبكة الإنترنت العالمية



website
موقع إلكتروني



message
رسالة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

communicate	يتواصل	complicated	معقدة
Morse Code	شفرة مورس	more difficult	أكثر صعوبة
signals	إشارات	take a day or more	تستغرق يومًا أو أكثر
wire	سلك	take a long time	تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
long clicks	نقرات طويلة	people	الناس
short clicks	نقرات قصيرة	as soon as	بمجرد أن
stamp	طابع بريد	the first way	أول طريقة

Prepositions

keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال	around the world	حول العالم
look at	ينظر إلى	used to	اعتاد أن
along a wire	على امتداد سلك	prefer to	يفضل أن

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

cell phone	: a phone that is connected to a phone system by radio instead of by a wire
telegraph machine	: a machine that's used to send telegrams
typewriter	: a machine with keys that prints letters, numbers, etc. on paper
website	: a place on the internet where you can go to find out information
World Wide Web	: an information system on the internet

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
work	يعمل	worked	worked
reach	يصل	reached	reached
prefer	يُفضل	preferred	preferred
look	ينظر - يبدو	looked	looked
sound	يبدو	sounded	sounded
use	يستخدم	used	used
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
send	يرسل	sent	sent
take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written
buy	يشترى	bought	bought



Read and learn

Communication types

أنواع التواصل

1 Look at this website, Hana. It's about how people used to **communicate**. It looks more difficult than **communicating** today!

انظري إلى هذا الموقع الإلكتروني يا هانا. إنه يتحدث عن الطرق التي اعتاد الناس على التواصل بها. إنها تبدو أكثر صعوبة من التواصل في الوقت الحاضر!

4 How did it work?
كيف كانت تعمل؟

2 What's that one?

ما هذا الشيء؟

3 That's a **telegraph machine**. It was the first way of sending messages around the world quickly.

هذه آلة تلغراف. لقد كانت أول وسيلة لإرسال الرسائل حول العالم بسرعة.

5 It used **Morse Code**. That's a code of short and long **clicks**. The telegraph machine can send signals along a wire.

كانت تستخدم شفرة مورس. وهي شفرة من النقرات القصيرة والطويلة. يمكن لآلة التلغراف إرسال إشارات عبر سلك.

6 Wow, that sounds **complicated**. I prefer to video call my friends!

واو، هذا يبدو معقدًا. أنا أفضل إجراء مكالمة فيديو مع أصدقائي!

What do you think a 'click' is?

When is each one used?



the telegraph
1830



the typewriter
1867



the telephone
1876



the radio
1901



the television
1927



the cell phone
1973



the laptop
1981



the World Wide
Web
1991

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

time - websites - quickly - messages - cell phones

Nowadays, people use emails to communicate. They can send
 ① around the world very quickly. They can send
 them on laptops, computers, or ② They can send
 the same message to lots of people in no ③ They
 use ④ to send these emails.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A telegraph machine was an important machine. It was the first way of sending messages around the world quickly. It used Morse Code. That's a code of short and long clicks. The telegraph machine can send signals along a wire.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The telegraph machine can send (letters - emails - messages).
2. The telegraph machine can send signals along a (rope - wire - string).

B Answer these questions:

3. What was the first way of sending messages quickly?



4. What's Morse Code?



5. Summarize the text in one sentence.



6. Give a suitable title to the text.



3 Read, order, and write:

1. a - letter - write - You - a pen - with.



2. was - invented - television - the - first - When?



3. video call - prefer - to - I - friends - my!



4. is - What - machine - a - telegraph?



Lessons 2-3-4

Language use & Vocabulary

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



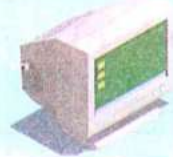
computer
حاسوب (كمبيوتر)



central processing unit (CPU)
وحدة المعالجة المركزية



screen
الشاشة الزجاجية



monitor
شاشة



memory
ذاكرة



storage
تخزين



printer
طابعة



communication
تواصل - اتصال



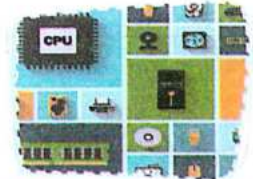
keyboard
لوحة المفاتيح



mouse
فأرة



external hard drive
قرص ملب (هارد) خارجي



parts
أجزاء

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابليت)	keep information	يحتفظ بالمعلومات
telegram	تلغراف (رسالة مُرسلة بآلة التلغراف)	follow instructions	يتبع التعليمات
smart phone	هاتف ذكي	made it easy	سهلت - جعلت من السهل
brain	مخ	before	قبل
directly	بطريقة مباشرة	the correct person	الشخص الصحيح
video message	رسالة عبر الفيديو	upload	يُحمّل من الجهاز إلى الإنترنت

office	مكتب	billions	بلايين - مليارات
store	متجر - محل	metal	معدن
businesses	أعمال - مشاريع تجارية	plastic	بلاستيك
shopping	التسوق	glass	زجاج
work (n)	عمل	wood	خشب
internet	شبكة الإنترنت	paper	ورق

photos	صور	far away	بعيدًا
games	ألعاب	other forms	أشكال أخرى
wider	أوسع - أكبر	school lessons	دروس المدرسة
flat	مسطح - مُستوي	important	هام - مهم
simple	بسيط	eventually	في النهاية - وأخيرًا
develop	يطور	email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Vocabulary Study Student's Book

CPU	: central processing unit, the 'brain' of the computer – it makes the computer follow instructions
monitor	: a piece of equipment with a screen that shows information or pictures
screen	: the flat glass part of the monitor, television etc,
keyboard	: a set of keys on the computer which you press to produce letters
mouse	: a small object that you move with your hand and press to give commands to the computer
external hard drive	: the part of the computer that stores information outside the CPU and can be connected to any other computer
memory	: this keeps information for a short time so the CPU can use it
storage	: this keeps information for a long time, often in a hard drive

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
develop	يطور	developed	developed
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
upload	يُحمّل من الجهاز إلى الإنترنت	uploaded	uploaded
deliver	يُسلّم	delivered	delivered
call	يُسمّي - يدعي	called	called
work	يعمل	worked	worked
replace	يحل محل - يستبدل	replaced	replaced
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
follow	يتبع - يتابع	followed	followed
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
read	يقرأ	read	read
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
send	يبعث - يرسل	sent	sent
make	يصنع	made	made
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
see	يرى	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written
take	يأخذ	took	taken
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken



Read and learn



- ▶ Computers **are used** in many offices, stores, and businesses.
- ▶ Billions of emails are sent every day.
- ▶ A computer **is made** of metal, plastic and glass. It **isn't made** of wood!
- ▶ **Is** the World Wide Web (www) **used** by lots of people? Yes, it is!

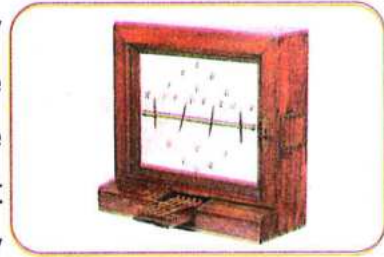


- ▶ نستخدم أجهزة الحاسوب في الكثير من المكاتب والمتاجر والمشاريع التجارية.
- ▶ تُرسل مليارات رسائل البريد الإلكتروني كل يوم.
- ▶ جهاز الحاسوب يُصنع من المعدن والبلاستيك والزجاج. إنه لا يُصنع من الخشب.
- ▶ هل شبكة الإنترنت العالمية تُستخدم بواسطة العديد من الناس؟ نعم!

The telegraph machine



The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away. Before the telegraph machine, many letters **were sent**. These could take a long time to arrive. Messages sent by a telegraph machine **were called** telegrams. In telegrams, important information **was written** and read quickly. They **were written** in Morse Code. This code **was invented** by Samuel Morse. The code **was understood** by the person who worked in the telegraph office. They wrote the messages on paper. Then the paper messages **were delivered** to the correct person.



Eventually, telegrams **were replaced** by other forms of communication. In 1876, the telephone **was invented**.

People could speak directly to people far away. The first email **was sent** in 1971. Communication around the world is now quicker than people in the past ever imagined!

آلة التلغراف

لقد سهلت آلة التلغراف التواصل مع الأشخاص البعيدين. قبل آلة التلغراف، كان يتم إرسال العديد من الرسائل. لكن وصولها كان يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً. الرسائل المرسلة عن طريق آلة التلغراف كانت تسمى رسائل آلة التلغراف. في رسائل آلة التلغراف، كان يتم كتابة المعلومات المهمة وقراءتها بسرعة. لقد كانت تُكتب بشفرة مورس. لقد اخترعت هذه الشفرة بواسطة صامويل مورس. كانت الشفرة تُفهم بواسطة الشخص الذي كان يعمل في مكتب التلغراف. وكانوا يكتبون الرسائل على الورق ثم يتم توصيل الرسائل الورقية إلى الشخص الصحيح. في نهاية المطاف، استُبدلت رسائل آلة التلغراف بأشكال أخرى من التواصل. في عام 1876، تم اختراع الهاتف. ومن خلاله استطاع الناس التحدث مباشرة للأشخاص البعيدين عنهم. تم إرسال أول رسالة بريد إلكتروني في عام 1971. أصبح التواصل حول العالم الآن أسرع مما كان يتخيله الناس في الماضي!

Grammar Study



The Present Simple Passive Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط في المبني للمجهول

- We use the passive voice to emphasise the action rather than the person who did it (the agent).

■ تُبنى الجملة للمجهول للتأكيد على الحدث (المفعول) أكثر من الشخص الذي قام بالحدث (الفاعل).

○ Lots of people use the World Wide Web.

▶ The World Wide Web is used by lots of people.

- The passive is formed with the (verb to be) and the past participle of the main verb.

■ قاعدة تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلي المبني للمجهول: (am – is – are) + PP

- We make computers of metal, plastic and glass.
▶ Computers are made of metal, plastic and glass.
- Many people see videos on the internet.
▶ Videos on the internet are seen by many people.
- Students don't use computers in all school lessons.
▶ Computers aren't used in all school lessons.
- Is it used for sending emails? ▶ Yes, it is.



The Past Simple Passive Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط المبني للمجهول

(was - were) + PP

قاعدة تحويل زمن الماضي البسيط إلي المبني للمجهول:

- Samuel Morse invented the telegraph machine in 1830s.
 The telegraph machine was invented by Samuel Morse in 1830s.
- They sent the first email in 1971.
 The first email was sent in 1971.
- Salma painted these pictures.
 These pictures were painted by Salma.

Exercises on Lessons 2 3 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sent - is - used - are - made

Computers are very important nowadays. Computers are
 ① in many offices, stores, and businesses. A computer
 ② made of metal, plastic and glass. It isn't
 ③ of wood! We also use computers to send emails.
 Billions of emails are ④ every day.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Emails (is - are) sent from computers and smart phones.
2. The photos are (upload - uploaded) onto a website.
3. Videos on the internet (is - are) seen by many people.
4. Computers are (use - used) for work, communication, games, and shopping!
5. Tablets and smart phones (is - are) used in some school lessons.

SB

SB

SB

SB

SB

6. The code (is - was - were) understood by the person who worked in the telegraph office.
7. Telegrams were (write - wrote - written) in Morse Code.
8. The paper messages (has - was - were) delivered to the correct person.
9. Computers (were used - are used - is used) in many offices, stores, and businesses.
10. People (are sent - were sent - send) billions of emails every day.
11. Billions of emails (are sent - send - were sent) every day.
12. The telegraph machine (invented - is invented - was invented) in the 1830s.
13. A computer (don't made - isn't made - is made) of wood!
14. Is the World Wide Web (www) (using - use - used) by lots of people?
15. A computer (was made - is made - made) of metal, plastic and glass.
16. In 1876, Graham Bell (invented - is invented - was invented) the telephone.
17. In 1876, the telephone (invented - was invented - is invented).
18. Messages sent by telegraph machine were (calling - called - call) telegrams.
19. (Were - Are - Was) telegrams used now?
20. This cake (is - wasn't - were) made by my sister. It was made by mom.

3 Read and circle the correct words:



Student's
Book

The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away. Before the telegraph machine, many letters ① was / were sent. These could take a long time to arrive. Messages sent by telegraph machine were ② call / called telegrams. In telegrams, important information ③ was / were written and read quickly. They were ④ write / written in Morse Code. This code was ⑤ invented / invent by Samuel Morse. The code ⑥ was / were understood by the person who worked

in the telegraph office. They wrote the messages on paper. Then the paper messages ⑦ **were** / **was** delivered to the correct person.

Eventually, telegrams ⑧ **were** / **was** replaced by other forms of communication. In 1876, the telephone was ⑨ **invent** / **invented**.

People could speak directly to people far away. The first email ⑩ **was** / **were** sent in 1971. Communication around the world is now quicker than people in the past ever imagined!

4 Make negative correct sentences:



Student's
Book

1. computers / not use / in all school lessons



2. the telegraph machine / not use / today



3. emails / not write / with a pen and paper



4. a telephone / not use / for sending video messages



5 Read, order, and write:

1. are - sent - emails - **Billions** - of - every day.



2. are - used - **Computers** - offices - in - many.



3. watched - videos - **Are** - internet - on - the?



4. telephone - **The** - was - in - 1876 - invented.



5. was - sent - email - **The first** - in - 1971.



Lessons 5-6

Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Reading: Transportation



Phonics: The (aw), (au) and (or) sounds:



(aw)

The letters (aw) make the sound /ɔ:/



draw
يرسم



yawn
يتشأب



straw
شفاطة - أنبوبة

(au)

The letters (au) make the sound /ɔ:/



audio message
رسالة صوتية



pause
توقف - إيقاف

(or)

The letters (or) make the sound /ɔ:/



Morse Code
شفرة مورس



short
قصير



Listen and say

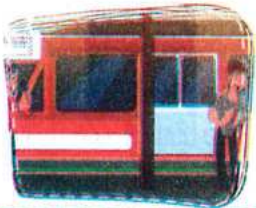


I want you to **draw** a picture
with paint and a **straw**.
Fares, don't **yawn** in class!



Listen to the **audio**. There will
be a **short pause**.

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



subway

مترو الأنفاق



train

قطار



bus

أتوبيس



car

سيارة



taxi

سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)



boat

قارب - مركب



ferry

عَبّارة - معدية



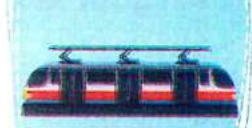
bike

دراجة



airplane

طائرة



high-speed train

قطار فائق السرعة



electric car

سيارة كهربائية



steam train

قطار يعمل بالبخر



horse and cart

حصان وعربة



the first car

السيارة البدائية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

transportation

النقل - المواصلات

old-fashioned

قديم الطراز (موضة قديمة)

modern

حديث

wheel

إطار - عجلة

engine

محرك - موتور

fossil fuel

وقود حفري

cause pollution

يسبب التلوث

paint

دهان - طلاء

magnet

مغناطيس

long journeys

رحلات طويلة

Prepositions

within a city

داخل المدينة

communicate with

يتواصل مع

good at

جيد في

on water

على الماء

all over the world

في كل أنحاء العالم

on foot

سيرًا على الأقدام

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

transportation	: the action of transporting someone or something
subway	: the metro or the underground
steam train	: a train that's run by steam
yawn	: to open your mouth wide and breathe very deeply
pause	: a temporary stop in action or speech
audio	: sound
engine	: a machine with moving parts that turns power into motion
wheel	: one of the round things under a car, bicycle, etc., that turns on the surface of the ground when it moves
speed	: the rate at which someone or something is able to move or operate

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
yawn	يتشأب	yawned	yawned
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	listened to
cause	يسبب	caused	caused



Read and learn



1

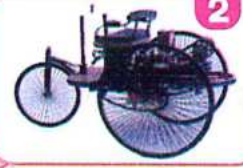


This is an old-fashioned type of transportation. You need an animal for this.

هذا نوع قديم الطراز من وسائل المواصلات. أنت بحاجة إلى حيوان ليجرها.

This was invented in 1886 and it had three wheels and an engine.

تم اختراع هذه في عام 1886 وكان لها ثلاث عجلات ومحرك.



3



Modern electric ones were invented in 1996.

تم اختراع السيارات الكهربائية الحديثة في عام 1996.

Old ones used fossil fuels and caused pollution.

كانت وسائل النقل القديمة تستخدم الوقود الحفري وكانت تسبب التلوث.



5



Modern ones can use magnets and go very fast.

تستطيع وسائل النقل الحديثة أن تستخدم المغناطيسات وأن تسير بسرعة كبيرة.

Transportation

Transportation within a city

التنقل داخل المدينة

bike - bus - car - on foot - subway - taxi - [ferry is also possible]

Transportation for long journeys

التنقل للرحلات الطويلة

airplane - boat - bus - car - ferry - train

Transportation on water

التنقل على الماء

boat - ferry

Transportation for lots of people

التنقل لعدد كبير من الناس

airplane - bus - ferry - subway - train



1 Listen and write the missing sounds:

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



sh _ _ t



y _ _ n



p _ _ se



str _ _



_ _ dio message

MORSE CODE



M _ _ se Code



dr _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cart - pollution - electric - trains - car

There are a lot of transportation types. The ① is an old type of transportation. You need an animal for this. The first ② was invented in 1886 and it had three wheels and an engine. Modern ③ cars were invented in 1996. Old steam ④ used fossil fuels and caused pollution. Modern high-speed trains can use magnets and go very fast.

3 Read, order, and write:

1. play - Let's - game - a.

▶

2. good - at - not - drawing - I'm - very!

▶ !

3. a - short - be - There'll - pause.

▶

4. make - I'll - message - an - audio.

▶

5. audio - a - short - be - it - Will?

▶ ?

4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"Transportation types"

▶ Ideas to help you: - car - steam trains - high-speed trains

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

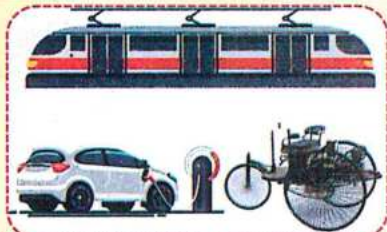
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 7-8

Reading: Pros and cons of transportation

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

pros
no pollution - cheap

pros

مميزات

cons
causes pollution - expensive

cons

عيوب



traffic

حركة المرور



cause pollution

يسبب تلوث



comfortable

مريح



expensive

غالي الثمن



cheap

رخيص



suit (v)

يناسب - يلائم



on holiday

في إجازة



journey

رحلة



the country

الريف



cost (v)

يكلف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

busy city

مدينة مزدحمة

slower

أبطأ

the other side

الجانب الآخر

faster - quicker

أسرع

places

أماكن

dangerous

خطير

lots of money

الكثير من المال

travel safely

يسافر بأمان

tickets

تذاكر

cycling

ركوب الدراجة

Prepositions

busy with	مشغول بـ	wait for	ينتظر
take over	يستغرق	on the train	في القطار
full with	مملوء بـ - ممتلئ بـ	good for	صالح لـ - مفيد لـ

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

pros	: advantages or merits
cons	: disadvantages or demerits
traffic	: vehicles moving on a road or public highway
the country	: rural areas or villages where there are lots of green fields and trees
suit (v)	: to be convenient for or acceptable to
cost (v)	: to have a particular price

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
suit يناسب - يلائم	suit	suit
travel يسافر	traveled	traveled
wait ينتظر	waited	waited
stay يبقى - يُقيم	stayed	stayed
want يريد	wanted	wanted
visit يزور	visited	visited
need يحتاج	needed	needed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
cost يُكَلِّف	cost	cost
sleep ينام	slept	slept
take يأخذ - يستغرق	took	taken



Read and learn



Pros and cons of transportation

Adam wants to visit his friend Wael, who lives on the other side of the city. It's a busy city with lots of traffic in some places. He doesn't want his journey to cost a lot of money or cause too much pollution. His parents want him to travel safely.



مميزات وعيوب وسائل المواصلات

يريد آدم زيارة صديقه وائل الذي يعيش في الجانب الآخر من المدينة. إنها مدينة مزدحمة بها الكثير من الحركة المرورية في بعض الأماكن. إنه لا يريد أن تُكلف رحلته الكثير من المال أو تسبب الكثير من التلوث ويريد والديه أن يسافر بأمان.

	Pros	Cons
On foot 	* cheap رخيص الثمن * no pollution لا يسبب التلوث	* It could be dangerous if there is a lot of traffic. قد يكون خطيرًا إذا كان هناك الكثير من حركة المرور. * It might take a long time to walk to the other side of the city. قد يستغرق المشي إلى الجانب الآخر من المدينة وقتًا طويلًا.
By bike 	* cheap رخيص الثمن * no pollution لا يسبب التلوث	* It could be dangerous if there is a lot of traffic. قد يكون خطيرًا إذا كان هناك الكثير من حركة المرور.

By car * safer and quicker than walking or cycling



أكثر أمانًا وأسرع من المشي أو ركوب الدراجات

* It causes pollution.

إنه يسبب التلوث.

* There is already a lot of traffic in the city.

يوجد بالفعل الكثير من حركة المرور في المدينة.

* It costs more to travel by car.

يكلف السفر بالسيارة أكثر.

By bus * safer and quicker than walking or cycling



أكثر أمانًا وأسرع من المشي أو ركوب الدراجات

* It may not be as quick as going by car.

قد لا تكون سريعة مثل الذهاب بالسيارة.

* It might have to wait for a bus.

قد تضطر إلى انتظار الحافلة.

* It causes pollution.

إنه يسبب التلوث.

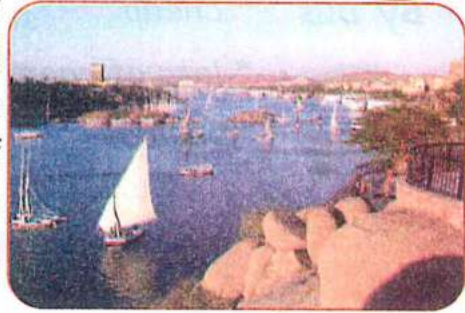
* cheap

رخيص الثمن

Pros and cons of transportation



Sara and her family live in Aswan, and they want to travel to Cairo on holiday. Sara's dad wants to travel quickly. Sara's mom wants the journey to be comfortable. Sara took a lot of clothes with her. They have quite a lot of bags to take. There are five people traveling _ Sara, her brother and sister, and their parents.



مميزات وعيوب وسائل المواصلات

تعيش سارة وعائلتها في أسوان، ويريدون السفر إلى القاهرة في إجازة. يريد والد سارة السفر بسرعة وتريد والدة سارة أن تكون الرحلة مريحة. أخذت سارة الكثير من الملابس معها. لديهم الكثير من الحقائب لأخذها. هناك خمسة أشخاص سيسافرون _

By car



* can travel at time that suits them, can see the country as they travel

يمكنهم السفر في الوقت المناسب. يمكنهم رؤية البلد أثناء سفرهم.

Cons

* It could take over ten hours.

يمكن أن يستغرق السفر أكثر من عشر ساعات.

* It might have to stay overnight somewhere, could be expensive.

قد يضطروا إلى البقاء في مكان ما طوال الليل، وقد يكون ذلك باهظ الثمن.

* The car will be full with five people and bags.

ستكون السيارة ممتلئة بخمسة أشخاص وحقائب.

* It's hard to drive over 850 km.

من الصعب القيادة لمسافة تزيد عن 850 كم.

By train

* cheap رخيص الثمن

* can travel overnight and sleep on the train

يمكن أن تسافر طوال الليل وتنام في القطار:

* It could take over 13 hours.

يمكن أن يستغرق أكثر من 13 ساعة.

* It might not be very comfortable.

قد لا يكون مريحًا جدًا.

* It needs tickets for five people.

تحتاج إلى تذاكر لخمسة أشخاص.

* It could be expensive.

يمكن أن يكون مكلفًا.

By plane

* quick سريع

* easy سهل

* It causes the most pollution.

تسبب أكبر قدر من التلوث.

* It needs tickets for five people.

تحتاج إلى تذاكر لخمسة أشخاص.

By bus

* cheap رخيص الثمن

* lots of room for bags

مساحة كبيرة للحقائب

* It is slower than a plane, car or train.

أبطأ من الطائرة والسيارة أو القطار.

* It needs tickets for five people.

تحتاج إلى تذاكر لخمسة أشخاص.

* It might not be very comfortable.

قد لا يكون مريحًا جدًا.

Exercises on Lessons 7 8**1 Read the following text and answer the questions below:**

Adam wants to visit his friend Wael, who lives on the other side of the city. It's a busy city with lots of traffic in some places. He doesn't want his journey to cost a lot of money or cause too much pollution. His parents want him to travel safely.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The city is (empty - easy - busy).
2. There's lots of (trains - boats - traffic) in some places.

B Answer these questions:

3. Who does Adam want to visit?

▶

4. Where does Wael live?

▶

5. What do Adam's parents want?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Sara and her family live in Aswan, and they want to travel to Cairo on holiday. Sara's dad wants to travel quickly. Sara's mom wants the journey to be comfortable. Sara took a lot of clothes with her. They have quite a lot of bags to take. There are five people traveling — Sara, her brother and sister, and their parents.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sara lives in (Luxor - Aswan - Cairo).
2. There are (four - five - six) people traveling.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do they want to travel to Cairo?

▶

4. Who wants to have a comfortable journey?



5. Who is taking a lot of clothes?



6. Summarize the text in one sentence.



3 Read, order, and write:

1. in - Aswan - live - her family - Sara - and.



2. clothes - a lot - of - is - taking - Who?



3. travel - wants - to - Sara's dad - quickly.



4. is - usually - The - train - crowded - very!



5. pollution - cause - Cars.



6. flying - like - don't - Zeinab's - sisters.



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



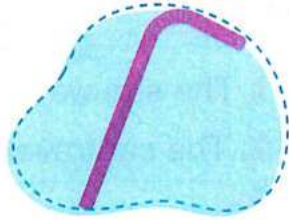
sh _ _ t



y _ _ n



p _ _ se



str _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

road - pollution - comfortable - masks - traffic

Zeinab's dad wants to travel quickly. There's usually a lot of ① on the ② to Alexandria. Zeinab's mom wants to be ③ and she doesn't want the journey to cause a lot of ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(9Ms)

Computers are used in many offices, stores, and businesses. Billions of emails are sent every day. A computer is made of metal, plastic and glass. It isn't made of wood! The World Wide Web (www) is used by lots of people.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A computer isn't made of (metal - glass - wood).
2. The World Wide Web (www) (is - was - isn't) used by lots of people.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where are computers used? ➤
4. How many emails are sent every day? ➤

5. What is the computer made of? ►
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ►

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. The sun was shining ○
2. The car traveled along, ○

(B)

- ☐ a) up, and upside down!
- ☐ b) through the window.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Nesma asked her mom to help her find the things they needed. ()
4. The girls were at the competition on Tuesday. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. In telegrams, important information was (write - wrote - written) and read quickly.
2. The motor car (is invented - were invented - was invented) by Karl Benz.
3. My dad traveled to London (on - by - in) plane.
4. Bread (makes - was made - is made) from flour.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. cause - Trains - than - cars - less - pollution. ►
2. letters - machines - Are - on - telegraph - sent? ► ?

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"What do you like watching on TV?"

► Ideas to help you: - cartoons - films - news

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Theme (4)
Communication

Unit 12

Community connections
الروابط المجتمعية



Objectives

Vocabulary	Newspapers: advertisement, article, byline, caption, cartoons, headline, sports, weather A newspaper story: editor, graphic designer, interview, issue, layout specialist, manager, public service message
Language	- Sherif was walking in the park. He wasn't looking where he was going. - Why were you traveling on the bus yesterday?
Reading	A text about how newspapers are made; a text about sources of news
Phonics	-le, -el, -al endings: article, vehicle, tunnel, musical
Life skills	Collaboration / Communication / Problem-solving
Values	Curiosity - Work ethics
Issues and challenges	Digital citizenship
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	Media: Making newspaper, sources of news

Lesson 1 Community connections



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**newspaper**

صحيفة - جريدة

**news**

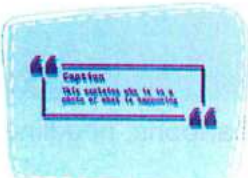
أخبار

**article**

مقالة

**advertisement**

إعلان

**caption**

تسمية توضيحية

**headline**

عنوان رئيسي

**byline**

عنوان ثانوي

**back page**

الصفحة الخلفية (الأخيرة)

**cartoon**

كاريكاتير - رسوم كارتونية

**play (n)**

مسرحية

**sports**

رياضات

**weather**

الطقس

**interview (v)**

يجري مقابلة

**medical equipment**

معدات طبية

**community**

مجتمع صغير

**brilliant**

رائع - مذهل

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

headteacher	مدير المدرسة	interesting	ممتع - شيق
swimming competition	مسابقة سباحة	Well done!	أحسنت!
medal	ميدالية	top	قمة
games	ألعاب	port	ميناء
country	دولة - بلد	explain	يشرح - يوضح
the center of the city	وسط المدينة	story	قصة
information	معلومات	something	شيء ما
text	نص	might	ربما

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

headline	: It's a short text at the top of a story.
byline	: This tells you who wrote a story.
caption	: This explains who is in a photo or what is happening.
article	: This tells a story about something that happened.
cartoon	: This can make you laugh.
advertisement	: This tells you about something you might want to buy.
weather	: This tells you if it will be sunny, cold or rainy.
sports	: This gives us information about competitions and games.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
interview	يجري مقابلة	interviewed	interviewed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
look	ينظر	looked	looked
help	يساعد	helped	helped
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
open	يفتح - يفتح	opened	opened
laugh	يفضح	laughed	laughed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
tell	يخبر	told	told
make	يصنع - يُعد	made	made
write	يكتب	wrote	written
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
see	يرى	saw	seen
give	يعطي	gave	given
take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took	taken
buy	يشترى	bought	bought



Read and learn

Who wrote a cartoon for the back page?
من كتب الكاريكاتير للصفحة الأخيرة؟

1 Look, Youssef, this is the new school newspaper! I helped to make it.

انظر يا يوسف، هذه هي الجريدة الجديدة للمدرسة! لقد ساعدت في إعدادها.

2 Great! That looks really interesting. What's in it?
رائع! يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام حقًا. ماذا يوجد بها؟

3 There's news about our school, and our community. I interviewed the headteacher about the new play equipment at school. Hana wrote a cartoon for the back page.

يوجد بها أخبار عن مدرستنا ومجتمعنا. لقد أجريت مقابلة مع مدير المدرسة حول أدوات اللعب الجديدة في المدرسة. لقد كتبت هنا كاريكاتيرًا للصفحة الأخيرة.

4 Brilliant! Did you write about the swimming competition?

رائع! هل كتبت عن مسابقة السباحة؟

5 Yes, I did.

Look, there's a photo of you with the article. You were wearing your medal!

نعم، لقد فعلت. انظر، يوجد صورة لك مع المقال. كنت ترتدي ميداليتك!

6 My mom will want to see that! Well done, Hany.

سترغب أمي في رؤية ذلك! أحسنت يا هاني.

Ask and answer

1 What do you like reading in a newspaper?

ماذا تحب أن تقرأ في الجريدة؟

2 I like reading about sports.

أنا أحب أن أقرأ عن الرياضة.



Exercises on Lesson

1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

interviewed - back page - competition - community - equipment

Hi, my name is Hany, and this is the new school newspaper! I helped to make it. There's news about our school, and our ①
I ② the headteacher about the new play equipment at school. Hana wrote a cartoon for the ③ I also wrote about the swimming ④

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There's an important piece of news to our city in the newspaper today. It's about a new hospital. The new hospital in the center of the city opened today. It has taken two years to build, and it has some of the most modern medical equipment in the country.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There's an important piece of news in the (magazine - newspaper - notebook) today.
2. The news is about a new (school - police station - hospital).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where is the new hospital?

▶

4. How long has the new hospital taken to build?

▶

5. What does the new hospital have?

▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

3 Read, order, and write:

1. are - Where - and - Youssef - Hany? ▶ ?
2. news - There's - our - school - about. ▶ ?
3. is - What - holding - Hany? ▶ ?
4. wrote - Hana - for - a cartoon - the - back page. ▶ ?
5. reading - like - you - do - What? ▶ ?
6. write - about - you - Did - competition - the swimming? ▶ ?

Lessons 2-3-4

Learn sounds with Busy Bee! & Language use



Phonics: The (-le), (-el) and (-al) endings:



(-le)

The letters (-le) make the sound /l/



article
مقالة



vehicle
مركبة - سيارة

(-el)

The letters (-el) make the sound /l/



tunnel
نفق



camel
جمل

(-al)

The letters (-al) make the sound /l/



musical
موسيقي



hospital
مستشفى



Listen and say

I read an article about
a musical camel that can
drive a vehicle!

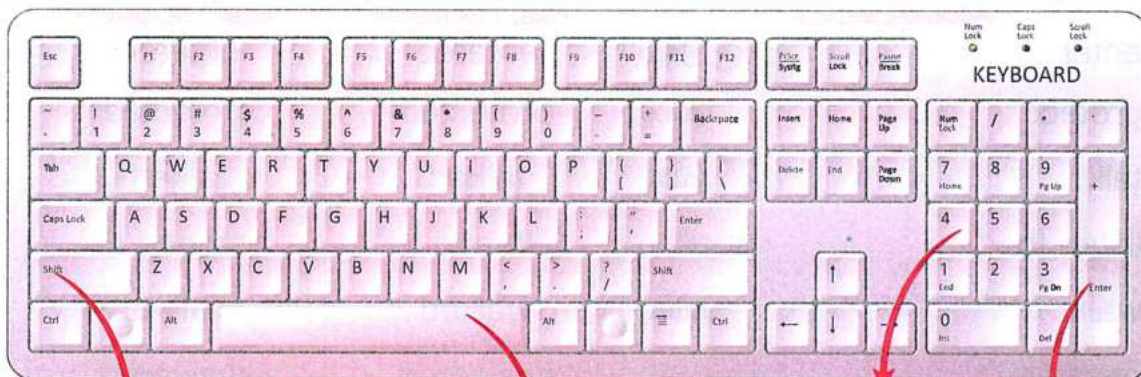


Keyboard buttons

أزرار لوحة المفاتيح

Writers use a keyboard to write magazines and newspapers.

يستخدم الكُتّاب لوحة مفاتيح لكتابة المجلات والصحف.



shift

انقل

space bar

شريط المسافة

numbers

أرقام

enter

إدخال

Key Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

make breakfast

يُحَضِّر (يُعِدُّ) الإفطار

park

منتزه - حديقة عامة

answer questions

يجيب على الأسئلة

posters

ملصقات

track (n)

طريق - مسار

race

سباق

guide

مرشد

environment

بيئة

outside

خارج - بالخارج

planet

كوكب

Prepositions

for children	للأطفال	put up	ينصب - يضع
get off	ينزل	listen to	يستمع إلى
on the bus	في الأتوبيس	on the track	في ميدان السباق
on the floor	على الأرض	in the park	في الحديقة العامة

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	listened to
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
answer	يرد - يجيب	answered	answered
advertise	يعلن	advertised	advertised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يعرض - يبين	showed	shown
put up	ينصب - يضع	put up	put up
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
run	يجري	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
read	يقرأ	read	read



Read and learn



1. Sherif was walking in the park.

كان شريف يسير في الحديقة.



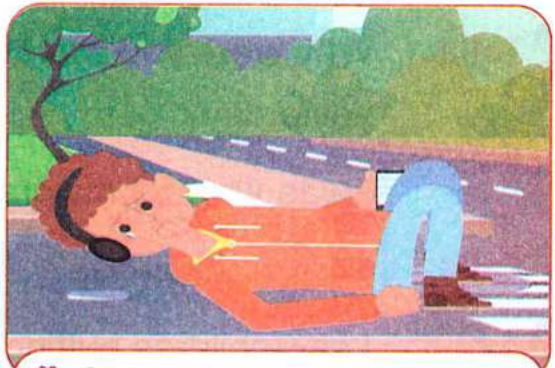
2. He wasn't looking where he was going.

لم يكن ينظر أين يسير.



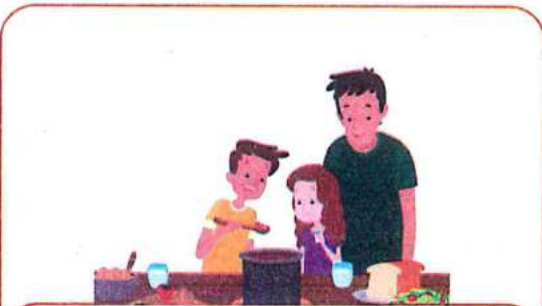
3. Tarek and Ashraf were walking in the park.

كان طارق وأشرف يسيران في الحديقة.



4. Oh no! Sherif was sitting on the floor!

أوه لا! شريف كان يجلس على الأرض.



1. The children were making breakfast for Dad.

كان الأطفال يعدون وجبة الإفطار للأب.



2. She was running on the track.

هي كانت تركض في ميدان السباق.



3. They **were listening** to the guide.

كانوا يستمعون إلى المرشد السياحي.



Talia : Why **were** you **traveling** on the bus yesterday?

Aya : I **was visiting** my grandparents.

Talia : What did you see?

Aya : I saw children putting up posters outside a school.

Talia : Why **were** they **doing** that?

Aya : They **were advertising** "Help the Environment" Day. Some children **were talking** about what we can do to protect the planet.

Talia : What did you do?

Aya : I got off the bus to listen. They **were saying** some very important things. One boy **was showing** a video he made about cleaning the beach.

Talia : **Was** he **answering** questions about it?

Aya : Yes, he was. It was very interesting.



- تاليا : لماذا كنتِ مسافرة في الحافلة أمس؟
 آية : كنت أزور جدّاي.
 تاليا : ماذا رأييت؟
 آية : رأييت أطفالاً يعلقون ملصقات خارج مدرسة.
 تاليا : لماذا كانوا يفعلون ذلك؟
 آية : كانوا يعلنون عن يوم (ساعد البيئة). كان بعض الأطفال يتحدثون عما يمكننا القيام به لحماية الكوكب.
 تاليا : ماذا فعلت؟
 آية : نزلت من الحافلة للاستماع لهم. كانوا يقولون بعض الأشياء المهمة جدًّا. كان هناك ولد يعرض مقطع فيديو أعده عن تنظيف الشاطئ.
 تاليا : هل كان يجب على الأسئلة عن ذلك الأمر؟
 آية : نعم، كان كذلك. كان ممتعًا للغاية.

Grammar Study



The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → was playing	I → wasn't playing	Was → I playing.....?
He } was playing	He } wasn't playing .	Was } he playing.....?
She } was playing	She } wasn't playing .	Was } she playing...?
It } was playing	It } wasn't playing .	Was } it playing.....?
You } was playing	You } wasn't playing .	Was } you playing....?
We } were playing	We } weren't playing .	Were } we playing.....?
They } were playing	They } weren't playing .	Were } they playing..?

Form:

(was – were) + verb + ing

يتكون من

Unit 12

- Sherif **was walking** in the park.
- They **were running** on the track at two yesterday afternoon.

■ **We use it to express an action that was in the middle of happening at a stated time in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا حدوثه في وقت معين في الماضي.

- They **were putting** up posters at 8 yesterday morning.

■ **In the negative form, we use (not) after (was - were).**

عند النفي نضع (not) بعد (was - were).

- They **weren't playing** football yesterday.
- He **wasn't traveling** on the bus yesterday.

■ **In the interrogative form, we use (was - were) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (verb + ing).**

عند عمل سؤال نبدأ بـ (was - were) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الإستفهام مع (ing + الفعل).

- Was she **making** a cake? ▶ Yes, she **was**.
- Were they **playing** tennis? ▶ No, they **weren't**.
- What **were** you **doing** at two yesterday? ▶ I **was having** lunch.

Exercises on Lessons 2 3 4

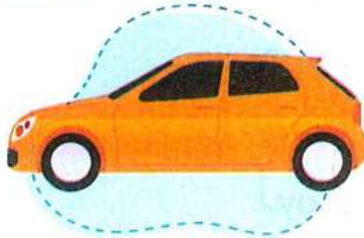
1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



tunn _ _



vehic _ _



artic _ _



hospit _ _



music _ _



cam _ _

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (am - was - were) writing a short story last week.
2. We (are - was - were) playing together last weekend.
3. He (was - were - is) having a shower yesterday.
4. They (was - were - are) going to the park last evening.
5. What (are - were - did) you doing last night?
6. (Was - Were - Is) she going to the club yesterday afternoon?
7. The children were (make - made - making) breakfast for Dad.
8. She was (run - running - runs) on the track.
9. They (are listening - were listening - was listening) to their teacher yesterday.
10. Why was she (travels - traveling - travel) by bus yesterday?
11. Were you (helping - help - helped) your mom?
12. Sherif (is doing - were doing - was doing) his homework at six last evening.

3 Choose the correct answer:



Student's
Book

- Talia** : Why were you (traveling - travel) on the bus yesterday?
- Aya** : I (was - were) visiting my grandparents.
- Talia** : What did you see?
- Aya** : I saw children putting up posters outside a school.
- Talia** : Why (were - did) they doing that?
- Aya** : They (were - are) advertising 'Help the Environment' Day.
Some children (have - were) talking about what we can do to protect the planet.

Unit 12

Talia : What did you do?

Aya : I got off the bus to listen. They were (say - saying) some very important things. One boy was (show - showing) a video he made about cleaning the beach.

Talia : Was he (answer - answering) questions about it?

Aya : Yes, he was. It was very interesting.

4 Read, order, and write:

1. walking - was - Sherif - the - park - in.

.....

2. doing - children - the - were - What?

..... ?

3. get off - did - Aya - Why - the - bus?

..... ?

4. read - you - Did - article - the?

..... ?

5. a - newspaper - reading - was - Dad.

.....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

"What your family were doing last weekend"

► Ideas to help you:

cooking - watching TV - reading

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 5

Making newspapers

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**editor**

ناشر - محرر

**journalist**

صحفي

**layout specialist**

متخصص تصميم

**interview (v)**

يُجري مقابلة

**general events**

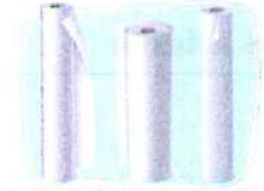
أحداث عامة

**stories**

أنباء - تقارير - قصص

**facts**

حقائق

**rolls of paper**

لفات من الورق

**production**

إنتاج

**distribution**

توزيع

**advertising**

إعلان

**printing press**

المطبعة - الطباعة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

news story

تحقيق صحفي - قصة إخبارية

opinion

رأي

files

ملفات

businesses

شركات - أنشطة تجارية

hard work

عمل شاق

advertise

يعلن

get it ready

يجهزها

machines

آلات

local area

منطقة محلية

thin metal plate

لوح معدني رقيق

print (v)	يطبع	logical	منطقي
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	topic sentence	جملة افتتاحية
copies	نسخ	concluding sentence	جملة ختامية
order	ترتيب	How far?	إلى أي مدى؟
supporting details	تفاصيل داعمة	image	صورة

Prepositions

on time	في الوقت المحدد	look like	تبدو مثل - تشبه
go through	تمر من خلال	come to your mind	تأتي إلى ذهنك
as a team	كفريق	space on the page	مساحة في الصفحة

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

editor	: a person who decides what stories go into a newspaper
journalist	: a person who finds out important things that are happening and writes about them
layout	: the way in which the parts of a newspaper are arranged
layout specialist	: a person who decides what the newspaper should look like
printing press	: the place where newspapers are printed
production	: the action of making or manufacturing
distribution	: is packing newspapers and sending them to shops
advertising	: the activity of producing advertisements
events	: things that happen, especially ones of importance
stories	: reports in a newspaper
news story	: a piece of news or a report
facts	: things that are known or proved to be true

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
print	يطبع	printed	printed
pack	يحزم (الأمثلة)	packed	packed
link	يربط	linked	linked
learn	يتعلم	learned	learned
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
look like	يشبه	looked like	looked like
try	يحاول	tried	tried
arrange	يرتب	arranged	arranged
decide	يقرر	decided	decided

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
come	يأتي	came	come
know	يعرف	knew	known
send	يُرسل	sent	sent
give	يعطي	gave	given
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make money	يربح مالاً	made money	made money



Read and learn

How are newspapers made?

كيف يتم إعداد الصحف؟



Making a newspaper is very hard work. **Journalists, editors** and **layout specialists** have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, advertising, **production** and **distribution**.

إعداد صحيفة هو عمل شاق جدًا. يتعين على الصحفيين والمحررين والمتخصصين في التصميم أن يعملوا بسرعة كبيرة كفريق لتجهيز الصحيفة بأكملها في يوم واحد. المجالات الخمسة التي يجب أن تعمل معًا هي الأخبار والقصص والإعلان والإنتاج والتوزيع.

News

الأخبار

Journalists find out the important and exciting things that are happening every day. Some journalists work in the local area of a town or city. Others can travel all over the world. They try to



learn as many facts as they can about an event, and **interview** people who know about it. Then they write the news story and send it to the **editor**.

يكتشف الصحفيون الأشياء المهمة والمثيرة التي تحدث كل يوم. يعمل بعض الصحفيين في المنطقة المحلية لبلدة أو مدينة وآخرون قد يسافرون إلى كل أنحاء العالم، محاولين معرفة أكبر عدد ممكن من الحقائق حول حدث ما، ويجرون مقابلات مع الأشخاص الذين يعرفون عن هذا الحدث. ثم يكتبون القصص الإخبارية ويرسلوها إلى المحرر.

Stories

القصص

Lots of newspapers have articles and stories about general events. These can give people's opinions about the news and events that are happening in the world.



تحتوي الكثير من الصحف على مقالات وقصص عن أحداث عامة. هذه الصحف يمكن أن تعرض آراء الناس حول الأخبار والأحداث التي تحدث في العالم.

Advertising

الإعلان

Lots of people read newspapers, so it is a good place for business to advertise. Newspapers need to have advertisements in them, because they make money from selling space on the page. All the Advertisements have to be ready on time to go in the newspaper.



يقرأ الكثير من الناس الصحف، لذا فهي مكان جيد للإعلان للشركات. تحتاج الصحف إلى وجود إعلانات فيها، لأنها تبيع الأموال من بيع مساحة في الصفحة. يجب أن تكون جميع الإعلانات جاهزة في الوقت المحدد لنشرها في الصحيفة.

Production

الإنتاج

When the files are ready, they are sent to the **printing press**. The pages of the newspaper are made into an image on a thin metal plate. Then big **rolls** of paper go through machines over the metal plates. The newspaper is printed! The printers work all night and make lots of copies of the newspaper. Some modern printers can make 70,000 copies an hour!



عندما تكون الملفات جاهزة، يتم إرسالها إلى المطبعة. يتم تحويل صفحات الصحيفة إلى صور موضوعة على لوح معدني رفيع. ثم تمر لفات كبيرة من الورق عبر الآلات فوق الألواح المعدنية. وهكذا تكون الصحيفة قد طُبِعَتْ تعمل آلات الطباعة طوال الليل وتقوم بعمل نسخ كثيرة من الصحيفة. يمكن لبعض آلات الطباعة الحديثة عمل 70,000 نسخة في الساعة!

Distribution

التوزيع

The newspapers are packed overnight and they are sent to shops all over the country for people to buy in the morning.

تُعبَأ الصحف طوال الليل وتُرسل إلى المحلات التجارية في جميع أنحاء الدولة ليشتريها الناس في الصباح.



Tip!

Descriptive paragraph

فقرة إنشائية وصفية

Steps to write a descriptive paragraph:

خطوات كتابة فقرة إنشائية وصفية:

- ▶ Spend some time thinking of the topic of your paragraph.
- اقض بعض الوقت في التفكير في موضوع فقرتك الإنشائية.
- ▶ Write down all details that come to your mind.
- اكتب كل التفاصيل التي تتبادر إلى ذهنك.
- ▶ Arrange the details to follow a logical order.
- رتب التفاصيل لتتبع ترتيبًا منطقيًا.
- ▶ Write a topic sentence, supporting details and a concluding sentence.
- اكتب جملة افتتاحية وتفاصيل داعمة وجملة ختامية.
- ▶ Try to link each sentence to the one that comes before or after it.
- حاول ربط كل جملة بالجملة التي تأتي قبلها أو بعدها.

في فقرتك الإنشائية حاول الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية:

What happens?

Why is it important?

What happens next?

ماذا يحدث؟

لماذا هو مهم؟

ماذا سيحدث بعد ذلك؟

Exercises on Lesson

5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

production - layout - distribution - editors - Journalists

Making a newspaper is very hard work. ①, editors and ② specialists have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, advertising, ③ and ④

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A newspaper takes many steps before you buy it at a shop. The journalist writes about an interesting event. The journalist writes a news story. The managing editor chooses which news stories to put in the newspaper. Then the story goes to the layout specialist, who puts it on the page. Then a headline, photo, caption and byline are put with the story. Finally, the newspaper is printed and distributed to shops.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The layout (editor - specialist - journalist) puts the story on the page.
2. The journalist writes a news (story - photo - book).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the managing editor do?

▶

4. What does a journalist write about?

▶

5. What happens after printing the newspaper?

▶

6. Summarize the text in one sentence.

▶

3 Read, order, and write:

1. writes - about - A journalist - event - an - interesting. ▶
2. people - Lots - of - newspapers - read. ▶
3. is - a newspaper - Making - work - very - hard. ▶
4. made - newspapers - are - How? ▶ ?
5. advertisements - have - them - in - Newspapers - need to. ▶

Lessons 6-7-8 Media: Sources of news & Reading: Be an editor!

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



report (v)
يبلغ - يكتب تقريرًا



live (adj)
حي - مباشر



main
أساسي - رئيسي



present (v)
يُقدِّم



radio presenter
مقدم إذاعي



radio program
برنامج إذاعي



on television
في التلفاز



on the radio
في الإذاعة (الراديو)



TV news
أخبار تلفزيونية



newsreader
مذيع أخبار



social media
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



updated (adj)
مُحدَّثة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

different

مختلف

space exploration

استكشاف الفضاء

clearly

بوضوح

scientist

عالِم

straight way

مباشرة

discovery

اكتشاف

true

حقيقي - صحيح

return (n)

عودة

university

جامعة

the same size

نفس الحجم

heart diseases	أمراض القلب	heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة
illnesses	أمراض	floods	فيضانات
our fight against	معركتنا ضد	match	مباراة
were damaged	أُتلفت	champion	بطل رياضي
Women's Soccer Team	فريق كرة القدم النسائي	captain	قائد الفريق

Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	able to	قادر على
at home	في البيت	come back	يعود
at the university	في الجامعة	protect from	يحمي من

Enrich your knowledge

Vocabulary Study

report (v)	: to tell people about something that one has observed, heard, done, or investigated
live (adj)	: being broadcast at the same time that it happens
radio presenter	: a person who presents programs on the radio
newsreader	: a person who reads news on TV or on the radio
updated (adj)	: more modern or up to date
champion	: a person who has won in a sporting competition
space exploration	: traveling into space in order to learn more about it
discovery	: to find out something that hasn't been known

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

newspaper	: You can read news stories and other articles.
TV	: You can watch this live and see videos from all over the world.
radio	: You can listen to presenters and other people on the news programs.
social media	: You can read this on a smartphone and it is updated very quickly.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
report	يَقْدِمُ تقريرًا	reported	reported
present	يُقَدِّمُ	presented	presented
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
share	يشارك - يتشارك	shared	shared
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	celebrated
change	يُغَيِّرُ - يتغيَّر	changed	changed
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned	phoned
update	يُحَدِّثُ	updated	updated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
win	يفوز	won	won
find	يجد	found	found
come from	يأتي من	came from	come from
read	يقرأ	read	read



Read and learn



Where do we get our news from? من أين نحصل على أخبارنا؟
Why is it good to be able to learn the news quickly? لماذا من الجيد أن نعرف الأخبار بسرعة؟

Journalists travel all over the world to report the news, and we can get the news from lots of different places.

يسافر الصحفيون إلى جميع أنحاء العالم لنقل الأخبار، ويمكننا الحصول على الأخبار من العديد من الأماكن المختلفة.

Newspapers

الصحف (الجرائد)

I'm Bella. My parents buy a newspaper every day. They read the main news stories and lots of other articles. There is news about sports, too. It's very interesting and there is a lot to read.



أنا بيلا. يشتري والداي جريدة كل يوم. إنهما يقرآن القصص الإخبارية الرئيسية والكثير من المقالات الأخرى. يوجد أخبار عن الرياضة أيضًا. إنها ممتعة للغاية ويوجد بها الكثير لقراءته.

TV news

الأخبار التلفزيونية

I'm Adam. In our family, we watch the news on television. It is live – it is happening at the same time as we watch it. The news can sometimes change very quickly, and on TV we



can find things out straight away. Newsreaders present the news and we can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.

أنا آدم. في عائلتنا، نشاهد الأخبار على التلفزيون. إنها تكون مباشرة — أي أنها تحدث في نفس الوقت الذي نشاهدها فيه. يمكن أن تتغير الأخبار في بعض الأحيان بسرعة كبيرة ويُمكننا التلفاز من اكتشاف الأشياء فور حدوثها. يقدم مذيعو الأخبار الأخبار، ونستطيع أن نشاهد مقاطع فيديو من أماكن مختلفة في جميع أنحاء البلد والعالم.

Radio news

الأخبار الإذاعية

I'm Gamila. My mom likes listening to the news on the radio when she is in her car or at home. The **radio presenters** explain everything very clearly. Sometimes people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio program. It's interesting, but I like listening to music in the car!



أنا جميلة. تحب أمي الاستماع إلى الأخبار في الإذاعة (الراديو) عندما تكون في سيارتها أو في المنزل. يشرح مذيعو الإذاعة كل شيء بوضوح شديد. في بعض الأحيان يمكن للناس الاتصال هاتفيًا وطرح الأسئلة أو التحدث عما يعتقدونه في برنامج إذاعي. إنه ممتع. لكنني أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى في السيارة!

Social media

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

I'm Aser. My older sister reads the news on her phone. It is **updated** very quickly, and you can find out what different people think about a news story. Sometimes people can share stories on **social media** that aren't true, so it's useful to know where a story comes from.



أنا آسر. تقرأ أختي الكبرى الأخبار على هاتفها. يتم تحديث الأخبار بسرعة كبيرة جدًا، وتستطيع أن تعرف ما يعتقدوه الأشخاص المختلفون حول قصة إخبارية. في بعض الأحيان يتشارك الناس قصصًا غير صحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. لذلك من المفيد معرفة مصدر القصة.

Read and learn some news stories

اقرأ وتعلم بعض القصص الإخبارية



1

Rain, Rain, Rain

There were some problems in Madrid and Barcelona today after heavy rain. There were floods in parts of the cities and cars were damaged ...

كانت هناك بعض المشاكل في مدريد وبرشلونة اليوم بعد هطول أمطار غزيرة. كانت هناك فيضانات في أجزاء من المدن وتضررت السيارات ...

Space Discovery

Scientists at the university have spoken about their exciting work in space exploration. 'We think we have found a new planet, about the same size as Earth,' said Dr Fahmy ...

تحدث العلماء في الجامعة عن عملهم المثير في استكشاف الفضاء. قال الدكتور فهمي: "نعتقد أننا وجدنا كوكبًا جديدًا، بنفس حجم الأرض تقريبًا" ...



2



3

Return of the Champions!

The Women's Soccer Team came back yesterday from their competition in France. They won all three of their matches. I spoke to the team captain. 'We're so happy,' she said.....

عاد فريق كرة القدم للسيدات أمس من منافسته في فرنسا. لقد فازوا في جميع مبارياتهم الثلاث. تحدثت إلى قائدة الفريق. قالت: "نحن سعداء جدًا"

A Win for Medicine

Doctors and scientists celebrated today after a new medicine was discovered to protect from heart disease. 'This will really help our fight against dangerous illnesses,' said Dr Hassan...

احتفل الأطباء والعلماء اليوم بعد اكتشاف دواء جديد للحماية من أمراض القلب. قال الدكتور حسن: "هذا سيساعدنا حقًا في مكافحتنا ضد الأمراض الخطيرة"



4

Exercises on Lessons 6 7 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

useful - media - updated - share - news

I'm Aser. My older sister reads the news on her phone. It is
 ① very quickly, and you can find out what different
 people think about a ② story. Sometimes people
 can share stories on social ③ that aren't true, so it's
 ④ to know where a story comes from.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

TV - world - videos - Newsreaders - live

In our family, we watch the news on television. It is ① — it
 is happening at the same time as we watch it. The news can sometimes
 change very quickly, and on ② we can find things out
 straight away. ③ present the news and we can watch
 ④ from different places around the country and the world.

3 Read, order, and write:

1. do - Where - get - we - from - our news?

▶ ?

2. all - over - travel - Journalists - the - world.

▶

3. watch - We - the - news - television - on.

▶

4. news - the - present - Newsreaders.

▶

5. My - parents - a newspaper - buy - day - every.

6. the news - listens - to - Who - the radio - on?

4 Match the headlines to the new stories:



Student's Book

1

Rain, Rain, Rain

2

Return of the Champions!

3

A Win for Medicine

4

Space Discovery

a

There were problems in Madrid and Barcelona today after heavy rain. There were floods in parts of the cities and cars were damaged ...

b

Scientists at the university have spoken about their exciting work in space exploration. 'We think we have found a new planet, about the same size as Earth,' said Dr Fahmy ...

c

The Women's Soccer Team came back yesterday from their competition in France. They won all three of their matches. I spoke to the team captain. 'We're so happy,' she said ...

d

Doctors and scientists celebrated today after a new medicine was discovered to protect from heart disease. 'This will really help our fight against dangerous illnesses,' said Dr Hassan ...

Unit 12 Test 6

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

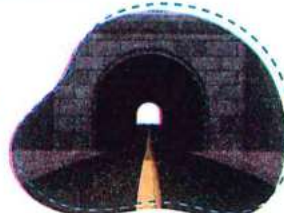
1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



music _ _



artic _ _



tunn _ _



hospit _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

doctor - interview - facts - editor - Journalists

Being a journalist is a great job. ① find out the important and exciting things that are happening every day. Some journalists work in the local area of a town or city. Others can travel all over the world. They try to learn as many ② as they can about an event, and ③ people who know about it. Then they write the news story and send it to the ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

I'm Adam. In our family, we watch the news on television. It is live — it is happening at the same time as we watch it. The news can sometimes change very quickly, and on TV we can find things out straight away. Newsreaders present the news and we can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Adam's family watch the news on (social media - radio - television).
- On TV, they can find things out (slowly - quickly - carelessly).

B Answer these questions:

- Who presents the news on TV?

4. What can you watch on TV? ▶
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. There's a machine that can help a farmer
2. The girls were busy talking

(B)

- ☐ a) about the inventions.
- ☐ b) get water to lots of animals.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. There were some amazing ideas and models in the competition. ()
4. Mom will write a diary about the competition just like her grandma. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. They were (run - runs - running) on the track yesterday morning.
2. (Was - Were - Are) you watching TV last night?
3. Was he (talking - talk - talked) about the environment?
4. Mom (is cooking - was cooking - were cooking) when dad arrived.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. were - What - doing - you - the library - in? ▶ ?
2. need - to - Newspapers - advertisements - have - in them. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The best thing your dad like reading in the newspaper"

▶ Ideas to help you: **newspaper - news stories - articles**

.....

.....

.....



Part 2

Non-Fiction Reader



The Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

the Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصري الكبير	the central room الغرفة الرئيسية
the largest الأكبر	was built بُني
around حوالي	inside بداخل - بالداخل
big enough كبيرة بما يكفي	airplane طائرة

Paragraph (2)

pharaohs فراعنة	statue تمثال
the Great Staircase الدَّرَج الكبير	builders بَنَّاوُون - عمال البناء
view مَنَظَر - مَشْهَد - إطلالة	around حول
incredible رائع - لا يصدق	displayed عُرِضَت

Paragraph (3)

the Egyptian Museum المتحف المصري	the center of Cairo وسط القاهرة
treasures كنوز	amazing مدهش
display cases صناديق العرض	Egypt's history تاريخ مصر
modern حديثة	safe آمنة
artifacts تُحَف - آثار - قِطَع أثرية	temperature درجة الحرارة

Paragraph (4)

tomb مقبرة	original أصلية
quite small صغيرة إلى حد ما	replica نسخة مقلدة طبق الأصل
galleries مَعَارِض	the same order نفس الترتيب
were found وُجِدَت	explored استُكشِف

Paragraph (5)

video tours	جولات سياحية مصورة بالفيديو	watch online	تشاهد عبر الإنترنت
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	building	مبنى
tourists	سائح - سائحون	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم

Other words

كلمات أخرى

objects	أشياء	gallery	معرض
takes you up	تأخذك لأعلى	copy	نسخة
original	أصلي	size	حجم - مقاس
made from	مصنوع من	materials	مواد خام

Artifacts & Statues

قطع أثرية وتماثيل

the statue of Ramses II	تمثال رمسيس الثاني	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون
Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون	The Palette of Narmer	ملاية (لوحة) نمر
Merneptah Stele	لوحة - مسلة مرنبتاح	the Pyramids	الأهرامات

Materials

مواد خام

gold	ذهب	green schist stone	حجر الشست الأخضر
granite	جرانيت	ivory	عاج

Question words

أدوات الاستفهام

Why	لماذا	How old	كم عمر
What	ما - ماذا	How tall	كم طول
Where	أين	How high	كم ارتفاع

The Grand Egyptian Museum

Why was the Grand Egyptian Museum built?

لماذا تم بناء المتحف المصري الكبير؟

Paragraph (1)

The Grand Egyptian Museum ① is a very exciting, new museum in Giza. It is one of the largest ② museums in the world ③. It's around 490,000 m², and the central room ④ is big enough to put an airplane inside ⑤.



① المتحف المصري الكبير ② أكبر ③ في العالم ④ الغرفة الرئيسية ⑤ بداخلها

Paragraph (2)

There is a huge ⑥ statue of Ramses II ⑦ in the room. It arrived at the museum in January 2018. The builders ⑧ of the museum built a large room around it. There are many more statues of pharaohs ⑨ displayed ⑩ on the Great Staircase ⑪. From the museum there is also an incredible view ⑫ of the Pyramids.

⑥ ضخم ⑦ تمثال رمسيس الثاني ⑧ بناؤون ⑨ فراعنة ⑩ عُرضت ⑪ الدّرج العظيم ⑫ إطلالة رائعة

Paragraph (3)

The Egyptian Museum in the center of Cairo ⑬ wasn't big enough to show all the amazing treasures ⑭ from Egypt's history. Some of the display cases ⑮ were old. The new museum building has modern ⑯ display cases which can keep the artifacts at the right temperature ⑰ so they are safe ⑱.

⑬ وسط القاهرة ⑭ كنوز مدهشة ⑮ صناديق العرض ⑯ حديثة ⑰ درجة الحرارة المناسبة ⑱ آمنة

Paragraph (4)

There are over 100,000 **artifacts** 19 inside the new museum, and over 3,000 **treasures** 20 from **Tutankhamun's tomb** 21. The four rooms of Tutankhamun's original tomb were quite small — only 110 m². The new museum has a **replica** 22 of the four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb, and much bigger **galleries** 23 to display the treasures in the same order as they were found. There are also photos of the time when people first **explored** 24 the tomb.

19 قِطْع أثرية

20 كنوز

21 مقبرة توت
عنخ أمون

22 نسخة مقلدة
طبق الأصل

23 مغارض

24 استكشفوا

Paragraph (5)

There are **video tours** 25 that you can watch **online** 26. These show you some of the artifacts, as well as some of the different galleries and parts of the building. Many **tourists** 27 from all over the world want to visit this amazing, new museum.

25 جولات سياحية
مصورة بالفيديو

26 عبر الإنترنت

27 سائحين - سُيَّاح



Read and learn



We can see objects in a display case.

نستطيع أن نرى المعروضات في صندوق عرض.



There are lots of display cases in this gallery.

يوجد الكثير من صناديق العرض في هذا المعرض.



This staircase takes you up to other galleries.

هذا الدّرج يأخذك لأعلى إلي معارض أخرى.



This statue of Ramses II is 11 meters tall and over 3,000 years old.

يبلغ طول تمثال رمسيس الثاني هذا 11 متر وعمره أكثر من 3000 عام.



A replica is a copy of an original artifact.

النسخة المقلدة هي نسخة طبق الأصل من القطعة الأثرية الأصلية.



There are lots of incredible artifacts in the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.

يوجد الكثير من القطع الأثرية المدهشة في المتحف المصري في القاهرة.



What is it?

ما هذا؟

Tutankhamun's mask

قناع توت عنخ آمون.

How old is it?

كم عمره؟

Over 3,000 years old.

أكثر من 3,000 عام.

What is it made of?

مما هو مصنوع؟

Gold.

الذهب.

How tall is it?

كم يبلغ طوله؟

About 54 cm tall.

يبلغ طوله حوالي 54 سم.



What is it? ما هذا؟

The Palette of Narmer.
لوحة نارمر.

How old is it? كم عمرها؟

Over 5,000 years old.
أكثر من 5,000 عام.

What is it made of?
مما هي مصنوعة؟

Green schist stone.
حجر الشست الأخضر.

How high is it? كم يبلغ ارتفاعها؟

About 63.5 cm high.
يبلغ ارتفاعها حوالي 63,5 سم.



What is it? ما هذا؟

The Merneptah Stele.
مسلة مرنبتاح.

How old is it? كم عمرها؟

Over 3,000 years old.
أكثر من 3,000 عام.

What is it made of?
مما هي مصنوعة؟

Granite.
الجرانيت.

How high is it? كم يبلغ ارتفاعها؟

Over 3 meters high.
يبلغ ارتفاعها حوالي أكثر من 3 أمتار.

Questions with their model answers

1 Choose the correct answer:



- In the large room, you can see
a) a portrait of Ramses II. b) a statue of Ramses II.
- From the Grand Egyptian Museum, you can see
a) the Pyramids. b) the old museum.
- The museum has a replica of Tutankhamun's
a) statue. b) tomb.
- You can see of the time when people first explored Tutankhamun's tomb.
a) photos b) videos



2 Choose the correct answer:

1. How big is the Grand Egyptian Museum?
 - a) 4,900m².
 - b) 49,000m².
 - c) 490,000m².
2. What can you see in the large room of the museum?
 - a) A statue of Ramses II.
 - b) A replica of Tutankamun's tomb.
 - c) A display case of artifacts.
3. What can you see from the Grand Egyptian Museum?
 - a) The Great Sphinx.
 - b) The Pyramids.
 - c) Abu Simbel Temples.
4. How many treasures from Tutankhamun's tomb are there in the Grand Egyptian Museum?
 - a) 100,000.
 - b) 200,00.
 - c) 3,000.
5. What does the Grand Egyptian Museum have a replica of?
 - a) The four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb.
 - b) The Great Sphinx.
 - c) The palette of Narmer.
6. What are there to show Tutankhamun's treasure in the same order as they were found?
 - a) Replicas.
 - b) Video tours.
 - c) Big galleries.

3 Read and match:



(A)	(B)
1. 3,000	a) size of Tutankhamun's tomb in m ²
2. 490,000	b) when the statue of Ramses II arrived at the museum
3. 2018	c) treasures from Tutankhamun's tomb
4. 100,000	d) number of rooms in Tutankhamun's tomb
5. 110	e) number of artifacts in the museum
6. 4	f) size of the Grand Egyptian Museum in m ²

4 Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. We can see objects	a) of an original artifact.
2. There are lots of	b) up to other galleries.
3. The staircase takes you	c) display cases in this gallery.
4. A replica is a copy	d) in a display case.

5 Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. The Grand Egyptian Museum	a) in the center of Cairo.
2. The builders of the museum	b) an incredible view of the Pyramids.
3. The Egyptian Museum is	c) built a large room around it.
4. From the museum there is	d) is a new museum in Giza.

6 Read and answer using the words in the box:



Activity Book

**Tutankhamun's chair - Palette of Narmer -
Tutankhamun's tomb - Merneptah Stele**

1. It is made of green schist stone. ▶
2. It's made of gold and wood. ▶
3. It's over 3 meters high. ▶
4. It was discovered in 1922 by a British archeologist. ▶

7 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. There are lots of incredible artifacts in the Egyptian Museum. ()
2. The Egyptian Museum is in Cairo. ()
3. The Palette of Narmer is made of gold. ()

4. Tutankhamun's mask is made of granite. ()
5. A replica is a copy of an original artifact. ()
6. There are video tours that you can watch online. ()
7. The four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb were quite big. ()
8. Many tourists from all over the world want to visit our museums. ()

Answers

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. **b.** a statue of Ramses II. 2. **a.** the Pyramids.
3. **b.** tomb. 4. **a.** photos

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. **c.** 490,000 m² 2. **a.** A statue of Ramses II 3. **b.** The Pyramids
4. **c.** 3,000 5. **a.** The four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb
6. **a.** replicas

3 Read and match:

1. c	2. f	3. b	4. e	5. a	6. d
------	------	------	------	------	------

4 Read and match:

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a
------	------	------	------

5 Read and match:

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b
------	------	------	------

6 Read and answer using the words in the box:

1. Palette of Narmer 2. Tutankhamun's chair 3. Merneptah Stele
4. Tutankhamun's tomb

7 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T	2. T	3. F	4. F
5. T	6. T	7. F	8. T

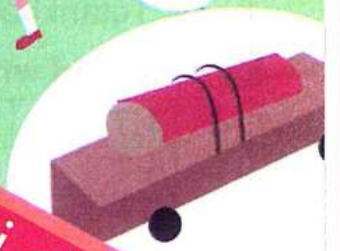
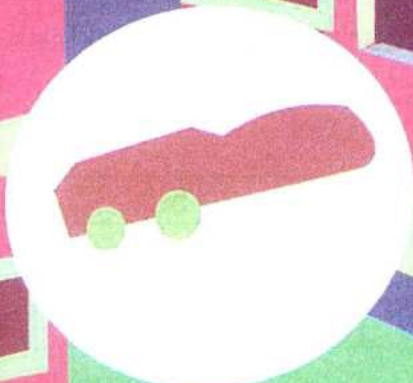


Connect Reading Adventures Fiction Reader

Nesma's Invention

اختراع نسمة

By NICOLA GARDNER



الشخصيات The characters



Nesma

She is a schoolgirl who wants to be an inventor. She read the school newsletter, and she saw an advertisement about a competition for the best invention. She participated in it and won a prize. She wanted to get some science equipment for her school.

هي تلميذة تريد أن تصبح مخترعة. لقد قرأت النشرة الإخبارية المدرسية ورأت إعلاناً عن مسابقة لأفضل اختراع وقامت بالاشتراك فيها وفازت بجائزة. وأرادت أن تشتري معدات علمية لمدرستها.



Nesma's Mom

She is Nesma's mother. She helped Nesma with her invention. She looked on the internet and found a small, cheap panel and a motor, too.

هي والدة نسمة. لقد ساعدت نسمة في اختراعها. فهي بحثت على الإنترنت ووجدت لوح صغير ورخيص، ومحرك أيضاً.



Nesma's Dad

He is Nesma's father. He asked Nesma to show him her ideas for the competition when he came home from work. He gave Nesma a box that belonged to her grandma to help her.

هو والد نسمة. لقد طلب من نسمة أن تعرض عليه أفكارها للمسابقة عندما عاد إلى المنزل من عمله. لقد أعطى نسمة صندوقاً كان يخص جدتها لمساعدتها.



Nesma's Grandma

She is Nesma's grandmother. She was an inventor, too. She left a box full of letters, drawings, photos, and a diary. She made plans for a vehicle that used a compass to navigate.

هي جدة نسمة. وكانت مخترعة أيضاً. لقد تركت صندوقاً مليئاً بالخطابات والرسومات والصور، ودفتر يوميات. لقد خططت لصنع مركبة تستخدم البوصلة للتنقل.



Laila

She is Nesma's friend at school. She encouraged Nesma to take part in the competition for the best invention. She helped Nesma with her invention.

هي صديقة نسمة في المدرسة. لقد شجعت نسمة على المشاركة في مسابقة أفضل اختراع. لقد ساعدت نسمة في اختراعها.



The judges

They are the people who decide who is the winner of a competition. They were looking at the model car and smiling. They encouraged Nesma and gave her a medal.

هم الأشخاص الذين يقررون من هو الفائز في المسابقة. لقد كانوا ينظرون إلى نموذج السيارة الخاص بنسمة وابتسمون. لقد شجعوا نسمة ومنحوها ميدالية.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



frame

إطار

A frame is a piece of wood or metal around the edges of a picture, window, mirror, etc.



judges مُحكِّمون - لجنة حكماء

Judges are people who decide who is the winner of a competition.



earthquake

زلزال

An earthquake can damage buildings.



inventor

مخترع

An inventor makes new things. These are called inventions.



motor

موتور - محرك

A motor uses electricity to make things move.



prize

جائزة

You can win a prize in a competition.



note

مذكرة - ملاحظة

These are a few words written down to help you remember something.



solar panel لوح شمسي

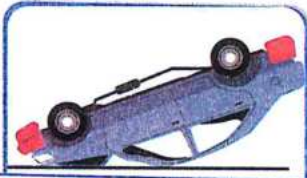
This changes energy from the sun into electricity.



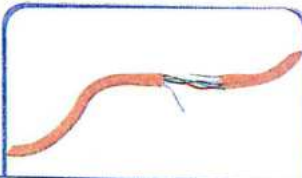
spring

نابض (زمبلك)

A long thin wire in a tight circle. It can move and store energy.



upside down مقلوبة
The top is turned to the bottom.



wire سلك
A strong, thin piece of metal.



newsletter نشرة إخبارية
A short written report.



invention اختراع
Something completely new that has just been thought of or made.



take part يشارك - يشترك
To take part in something means to join.



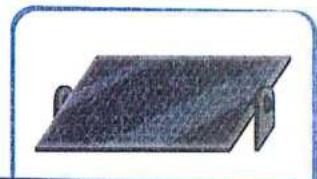
navigate يتحرك - يتنقل
To navigate is to decide which direction a ship or car should go in.



brilliant عبقرى
Someone who is brilliant is very clever.



solar energy طاقة شمسية
Solar energy is energy produced using the sun.



panel لوح
This is a piece of material made to form part of a surface.



science equipment معدات علمية
These are things that we use for a science experiment.

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

advertisement	إعلان	room	حجرة
win	يفوز	plans	خُطط
walk home	يمشي للمنزل	compass	بوصلة
websites	مواقع إلكترونية	wheel	إطار - عجلة
difficult	صعب	wind	رياح
competition	مسابقة	electricity	كهرباء
ideas	أفكار	vehicle	مَرْكَبَة - سيارة
drawings	رسومات	drawings	رسومات
diary	يوميات - مفكرة	up walls	على الحوائط
thought (think)	فَكَّرَت	track	طريق - مسار
belong to	يُخَص - ينتمي إلى	turn	تلف - تدور
science lessons	دروس العلوم	stuck	لصق
energy	طاقة	very far	بعيد جدًا

toy car	سيارة لعبة	amazing	رائع
damaged	مُدْمَرَة - تالفة	interested	مهتم
fall down	تسقط - تقع	way	طريقة
rescue workers	عمال الإنقاذ	stay	يمكث - يبقى
buildings	مباني	thin wood	خشب رقيق (رفيع)
dangerous places	أماكن خطيرة	magnet	مغناطيس

power	قوة	attached to	ربطت بـ
stuck (stick)	ألصق	connect to	يوصل بـ - يربط بـ
fantastic	رائع	cheap	رخيص الثمن
model	نموذج	perfect	مثالي - نموذجي
power	طاقة	keep ... warm	تحافظ عليه دافئاً
warm	دافئ	busy talking	مشغولون بالحديث
farmer	مزارع - فلاح	excited	فرحان - متحمس
medal	ميدالية	nervous	متوتر
had an idea	عندها فكرة	above the ground	فوق الأرض
worried	قلقة	through the window	عبر النافذة

Nesma's Invention

Nesma was reading the school **newsletter** ① when she saw an **advertisement** ②. There was a **competition** ③ for the best **invention** ④. 'Look, Laila,' said Nesma. 'This looks fun. I want to be an **inventor**! ⑤'

- ① نشرة إخبارية ② إعلان ③ مسابقة
④ اختراع ⑤ مخترع





'You should **take part** ①,' said Laila. 'You'd be really good.'

'Look! If we win a **medal** ②, we'll get some **science equipment** ③ for our school.

That's a **brilliant** ④ **prize** ⑤!' said Nesma.

- ① يشارك - يشارك ② ميدالية ③ معدات علمية ④ رائعة ⑤ جائزة

Nesma loved inventing things. She thought about the competition as she **walked home** ①.

What could she make? She could **invent** ② a **toy** ③, a **vehicle** ④, or something to **communicate** ⑤ with people. She didn't know what to make, but she knew she wanted to take part.

- ① كانت تمشي إلى المنزل ② تبتكر ③ لعبة ④ مركبة - سيارة ⑤ تتواصل



At home, Nesma **sat down** ①. She looked at books and **websites** ② for ideas.

There were so many **amazing** ③ inventions! How could she do something new?

She **took out** ④ her pens and paper, and started to draw. It was **difficult** ⑤.

- ① جلست ② مواقع إلكترونية ③ مذهشة ④ أخرجت ⑤ صعب

Nesma worked for a long time ①, but she couldn't get her ideas right. Her dad came home ② from work.

'That looks interesting ③, Nesma,' he said. 'What is it?' 'Oh, it's a competition at school. I don't think I'll take part. I can't think ④ of anything to make.' Dad sat down. 'Show me your ideas ⑤,' he said.

① وقت طويل ② عاد للمنزل ③ شيق ④ أفكر ⑤ أفكار



Nesma showed him the papers ① and drawings ②, but she was sad. She didn't think her ideas were very good. For a long time, her dad didn't say anything. Then he smiled at ③ her. 'You know, Nesma, I know someone who used to make drawings and inventions like this.' He stood up ④ and went out ⑤ of the room.

① أوراق ② رسومات ③ ابتسم لـ ④ وقف ⑤ خرج

When he came back ①, he was carrying ② an old box. 'This box has lots of things that used to belong to ③ my mom,' he said. 'This was Grandma's?' asked Nesma. She looked at the box. There were letters ④ and a diary ⑤, drawings and photos. Grandma used to be ⑥ an inventor, too!

① عاد ② يحمل ③ يخض ④ خطابات ⑤ دفتر يوميات ⑥ اعتادت أن تكون





There were **plans** ① for a vehicle that used a **compass** ② to **navigate** ③. There was a drawing of a **wheel** ④ that turned in the **wind** ⑤ and made **electricity** ⑥. Nesma found a drawing of a small toy car. It was **on a track** ⑦, but it was traveling **upside down** ⑧. Nesma was **interested** ⑨.

① خطط ② بوصلة ③ تتنقل ④ عجلة ⑤ رياح ⑥ كهرباء ⑦ على مسار ⑧ مقلوبة ⑨ مهتمة

She read Grandma's **note** ① under the picture.

'I **tried** ② to make a car that could **travel up walls** ③ and upside down.

This would be amazing. If there was an **earthquake** ④, **roads** ⑤ might be **damaged** ⑥.

Buildings might **fall down** ⑦ and make it hard to drive. We could use this car and make a track above the ground. **Rescue**

workers ⑧ could travel in **dangerous** ⑨ places to help people. But I couldn't find a way to make the car **stay** ⑩ on the track.'



① ملاحظة - ملحوظة ② حاولت ③ تمشي (تتنقل) على الجدران ④ زلزال ⑤ طرق ⑥ مدمرة ⑦ تسقط ⑧ عمال الإنقاذ ⑨ خطيرة ⑩ تبقى

As Nesma looked at the plan, she had an idea. She was learning about **magnets** ① in **science lessons** ② at school. Would that work?



① مغناطيسات ② دروس العلوم



The next day, Nesma told Laila her idea. 'That **sounds** ❶ great! Can I help?' said Laila. 'Yes please!' said Nesma. Nesma showed Laila her plans. 'We need some **thin wood** ❷ for a track, and a long, thin magnet to go under it. We need a small car to go on the track, with a magnet in it.' 'I'll **get** ❸ the wood!' said Laila. 'Great! I'll get some magnets.'

❶ يبدو ❷ خشب رقيق (رفيع) ❸ أحضر

The two girls **worked hard** ❶. They made a **frame** ❷ for the car to travel on. They **stuck** ❸ the long magnet to the frame, and the small magnet to the car to keep it on the track. The car had a little **spring** ❹ inside it. Nesma **pulled** ❺ the car back, then **took her hand off** ❻ it. The **energy** ❼ from the spring turned the wheels. The car moved along the track, but it didn't travel **very far** ❸.

'Why isn't it traveling?' asked Laila.

Nesma thought. She was worried. 'It isn't **fast** ❹ enough,' she said.



❶ عملوا بجد ❷ إطار ❸ لصقوا ❹ نايض (زمبلك) ❺ سحبت ❻ أفلتتها من يدها ❼ طاقة ❸ بعيدًا جدًا ❹ سريعة



They looked at the **model** ①. What could they do? The sun was **shining** ② through the window, and lots of children were playing **outside** ③. Suddenly, Nesma had an idea. 'It needs more **power**! ④' she said. 'We can use **solar energy**! ⑤'

① نموذج ② مشرقة ③ بالخارج ④ قوة ⑤ طاقة شمسية

Nesma asked her mom to help her find the things they needed. Her mom looked on the internet and found a small, **cheap** ① **panel** ② and a **motor** ③. They were **perfect** ④. Nesma put the motor on the car and **attached** ⑤ it to the wheels. Then she put the panel on the car and used **wires** ⑥ to connect it to the motor.



① رخيص ② لوح ③ مُخَرِّك ④ رائعين ⑤ ربطت ⑥ أسلاك



The friends tried again. They put the car in the sun, then **started** ① the motor. It worked! They watched happily. The car traveled along, up, and upside down! 'It's so clever! **Well done** ②, Nesma,' said Laila. 'Thank you for helping! It's **fantastic** ③.'

① شغلوا ② أحسنت ③ رائعة



On Thursday, the girls were at the competition. There were lots of children from schools around the city ①.

'Are you excited ②?' asked Laila.

'Yes, but I'm nervous ③, too,' said Nesma. They looked at the other inventions. There were some amazing ideas and models.

① من جميع أنحاء المدينة ② متحمسة ③ متوترة

'Look, there's a model of a house that uses wind to keep warm ①.'

'And there's a machine ② that can help a farmer ③ get water to lots of animals.'

'There are some great inventions here. I'm happy we came,' said Nesma.

'I'll write a diary about it when I get home, just like my grandma!'

① يبقى دافئاً ② آلة ③ مُزارع - فلاح



The girls were busy ① talking about the inventions. They didn't see the judges ② standing next to them. They were looking at the model car and smiling ③.

'Well done!' said the judges, and the girls looked at them. There was a medal ④ on their car! 'We've won a prize!' said Laila.

① مشغولين ② مُحكِّمين - لجنة حكم

③ يبتسمون ④ ميدالية



Questions with their model answers

1 Read and match:

'A'	'B'
1. Nesma was reading	a) inventing things.
2. There was a competition	b) talking about the inventions.
3. The girls were busy	c) the school newsletter.
4. Nesma loved	d) for the best invention.

2 Read and match:

'A'	'B'
1. Nesma wanted to be	a) what to make.
2. Nesma didn't know	b) at her grandma's drawings.
3. Nesma couldn't	c) an idea about magnets.
4. Nesma looked	d) an inventor.
5. Nesma had	e) her mom to help her find things.
6. Nesma asked	f) get her ideas right.

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- Nesma read about the competition on the school website. ()
- The prize will help the school. ()
- Nesma knew that she wanted to make a toy. ()
- Nesma showed her ideas to her dad. ()

5. Nesma's dad showed her a box of his drawings and plans. ()
6. Grandma found a way to make the car travel upside down. ()
7. Nesma thought that magnets could make the car stay on the track. ()
8. At first, the car wasn't fast enough. ()

4 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Nesma knew that she wanted to take part in the competition. ()
2. Nesma looked at books and websites for ideas. ()
3. Nesma showed her mom the papers and drawings. ()
4. Nesma's dad was carrying a new box. ()
5. The old box belongs to Nesma's grandma. ()
6. Grandma used to be a doctor. ()
7. There were plans for a toy that used a compass to navigate. ()
8. Rescue workers could travel in dangerous places to help people. ()
9. Nesma was learning about magnets in science lessons at school. ()
10. Nesma didn't show Laila her plans. ()

5 Who said or wrote it? Read and write Nesma, Laila, Dad or Grandma:



Student's
Book

1. 'If we win a medal, we'll get some science equipment for our school.'
.....
2. 'I tried to make a car that could travel up walls and upside down.'
.....
3. 'That sounds great! Can I help?'
.....
4. 'This box has lots of things that used to belong to my mom.'
.....
5. 'It needs more power!'
.....

6. 'We've won a prize!'

6 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Laila told Nesma about the competition. ()
2. Nesma quickly had a good idea for an invention. ()
3. Nesma read Grandma's notes about making a special car. ()
4. Nesma and her dad made the car together. ()
5. Nesma went to the competition with her mom. ()
6. Nesma decides to write a diary about the competition. ()

7 Read and answer:



Student's
Book

1. Why did the girls use magnets?
▶
2. How did they make the car move at first?
▶
3. Why didn't the car go round the track?
▶
4. What did Nesma decide to do to help the car move faster?
▶



8 Read and correct the bold words:



Student's
Book

1. Nesma **talked** about the competition as she walked home.
▶
2. Nesma **drew** for a long time, but she couldn't get her ideas right.
▶
3. They were learning about **motors** in Science.
▶

4. Nesma asked her mom to help her **make** the things she needed.



5. They put the car in the **water**, then started the motor.



Student's
Book

9 Read and answer:

"On Thursday, the girls were at the competition."

1. Who is at the competition?



2. How does Nesma feel? Why do you think she feels like this?



3. What inventions do they see?



4. What is Nesma going to do when she gets home?



5. What do the judges think of Nesma and Laila's invention?



Activity
Book

10 Read and match:

'A'

'B'

1. Who is at the competition?

a) She's going to write a diary about the competition.

2. How does Nesma feel?

b) A model of a house and a machine that helps farmers.

3. What inventions do they see?

c) They like it. They give them a prize.

4. What is Nesma going to do?

d) School children from the city.

5. What do the judges think of the girls' invention?

e) She feels nervous and excited.

Answers

1 Read and match:

1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a
------	------	------	------

2 Read and match:

1. d	2. a	3. f	4. b	5. c	6. e
------	------	------	------	------	------

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- F	4- T	5- F	6- F	7- T	8- T
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------

4 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- Yes	3- No	4- No	5- Yes
6- No	7- No	8- Yes	9- Yes	10- No

5 Who said or wrote it? Read and write Nesma, Laila, Dad or Grandma:

1- Nesma	2- Grandma	3- Laila
4- Dad	5- Nesma	6- Laila

6 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- F	3- T	4- F	5- F	6- T
------	------	------	------	------	------

7 Read and answer:

1. To make the car stay on the track.
2. They pulled it back and the spring turned the wheels.
3. It wasn't fast enough.
4. She decided to put a motor on the car and use solar energy to make it work.

8 Read and correct the bold words:

1- thought	2- worked	3- magnets	4- find	5- sun
------------	-----------	------------	---------	--------

9 Read and answer:

1. Children from schools around the city.
2. Excited and nervous, because she hopes the model works and the judges like it.
3. A model of a house that uses the wind to keep warm; a machine that helps farmers get water to animals.
4. She is going to write a diary about it.
5. They like it./ They give them a prize.

10 Read and match:

1. d	2. e	3. b	4. a	5. c
------	------	------	------	------

Part 3

Listening Scripts

Unit 7 Lessons 3 4 5



Listening Script

flute	jewel	cube
blue	glue	true

Unit 7 Test 1



Listening Script

new	june	blue	flew
-----	------	------	------

Unit 8 Lessons 3 4



Listening Script

sea creature	adventure	measure
treasure	pleasure	sculpture

Unit 8 Test 2



Listening Script

treasure	adventure	sculpture	measure
----------	-----------	-----------	---------

Unit 9 Lessons 2 3



Listening Script

sea	see	flour
flower	right	write

Unit 9 Test 3



Listening Script

here	hear	plain	plane
------	------	-------	-------

Unit 10 Lessons 7 8



Listening Script

change

energy

bandage

village

danger

giraffe

Unit 10 Test 4



Listening Script

danger

giraffe

bandage

village

Unit 11 Lessons 5 6



Listening Script

short

yawn

pause

straw

audio message

Morse Code

draw

Unit 11 Test 5



Listening Script

short

yawn

pause

straw

Unit 12 Lessons 2 3 4



Listening Script

tunnel

vehicle

article

blue

glue

true

Unit 12 Test 6



Listening Script

musical

article

tunnel

hospital

Step Ahead Series
Together to a bright future

CONNECT PLUS

- Units Revision
- School Exams
- Answers Key

3rd
Prim.
2026

Second Term



By a group of specialists

Contents

Part 1

Revision on Unit (7) Where are the family?

3

Unit (7) Test (1)

8

Revision on Unit (8) At the museum

10

Unit (8) Test (2)

13

Revision on Unit (9) At the hospital

15

Unit (9) Test (3)

19

Revision on Unit (10) We love adventure!

21

Unit (10) Test (4)

24

Revision on Unit (11) Keep in touch

26

Unit (11) Test (5)

29

Revision on Unit (12) Community connections

31

Unit (12) Test (6)

35

Part 2

Revision Tests

37

Part 3

Listening Scripts

58

Part 4

Answer Key

62

Part 1

Revision on the Units

Unit

7

Revision

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

look like - Non-identical - Identical - twins - different

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. ① twins mean that they are exactly the same. They look the same, and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers. ② twins can be similar to each other, or they can be very ③ They can be two brothers, two sisters, or a sister and a brother. Sometimes they ④ each other, and sometimes they don't.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fur - inherit - litter - traits - parents

The litter of newborn rabbits always looks very nice. They look very different from their ①! But soon their eyes open and their ② grow. As they get older, the rabbits in a litter look similar to each other, but not identical. The offspring ③ some traits from their mother and some ④ from their father.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

different - triplets - quadruplets - behave - siblings

Do you know who twins are? Twins are two ① who are born at the same time. They can be identical or non-identical. Sometimes people can be ② — three siblings, or even ③ — that's four! Twins often think and ④ in similar ways.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

seeds - flowering - pollen - cells - birds

Plants reproduce in two ways. Most plants are flowering plants. The flowers produce ① grains — very small structures. These are carried by insects, ② or the wind to other plants. When they are taken to another plant of the same type, the pollen grains mix with ③ in the new plant to make ④ When these seeds fall to the ground, they can grow into a new plant.

GRAMMAR REVISION

5 Choose the correct answer: Present Simple - Present Continuous

1. Look! She (are wearing - is wearing - wears) a pretty dress.
2. We (playing - play - plays) football every weekend.
3. Dad (sleep - is sleeping - are sleeping) now.
4. He (like - likes - is like) painting.
5. He (isn't - don't - doesn't) watch TV in the morning.
6. She's (read - reads - reading) now.
7. We (aren't - don't - doesn't) like to try new things.
8. I'm (wear - wears - wearing) shorts and a T-shirt.
9. Does she (make - makes - making) many friends?
10. Nancy (wear - wears - wearing) a uniform to school every day.
11. I sometimes (does - doing - do) the shopping with my mom.
12. Mom (make - makes - are making) us a cake every weekend.
13. He doesn't (likes - like - don't like) TV shows.
14. She's (wash - washes - washing) the dishes.
15. Are you (helps - helping - help) at home?

6 Choose the correct answer: Past Simple - Present Perfect

1. They (play - played - have played) football after school yesterday.
2. We (don't - didn't - aren't) play computer games last night.
3. We (have used - uses - is using) computers for a long time.
4. My sister and I (watch - has watched - watched) TV last night.
5. We've (finish - finished - finishing) our homework.
6. He didn't (rode - ride - rides) his bike yesterday.
7. Maged (knows - has known - have known) his best friend for three years.
8. Mona (helps - has helped - helped) her mom last Friday.
9. Amgad has (learn - learns - learned) lots of new things.
10. What (do - did - are) you do yesterday?
11. Have they (build - builds - built) a new house?
12. We (walked - walks - have walked) to the park last weekend.
13. (Is - Does - Did) they go to the farm?
14. (Has - Have - Did) she cleaned her room?
15. Did he (visit - visits - visited) his friend last night?

7 Choose the correct answer: Used to

1. Dad (uses - used - is using) to buy newspapers.
2. I used (at - in - to) talk a lot on the phone.
3. My uncle used to (has - have - had) a bike. Now, he has a car.
4. We (use - used - were using) to eat together.
5. She (doesn't - don't - didn't) use to go out at night.
6. They used to (live - lives - lived) in a small town.
7. He used to (play - plays - playing) in the street. Now, he plays in the club.
8. I (don't - didn't - haven't) use to be able to climb trees, but now I can.
9. He used to (wears - wore - wear) T-shirts. Now, he wears suits.
10. She didn't (use - used - using) to paint good pictures.

8 Read, order, and write:

1. I - Last - year, - to - swim - learned.

▶

2. play - used - to - I - the - flute.

▶

3. well - play - Amir - Does - the - guitar?

▶ ?

4. last - week - did - What - you - do?

▶ ?

5. a - picture - painting - I'm - of - you!

▶ !

6. produce - The - flowers - grains - pollen.

▶

7. to - walk - Lama - is - learning!

▶ !

8. Tarek - baby - is - brother - my.

▶

9. has - The - water - lily - leaves - flat.

▶

10. land - Insects - the - plant - on.

▶

11. Ali - now, - doing - are - you - What?

▶ ?

12. Younis - Does - curly - hair - have?

▶ ?

13. don't - have - rabbits - Newborn - any - fur.

▶

14. organisms - living - are - Plants.

▶

15. have - Rabbits - predators - lots - of.

▶

16. their - parents - from - Offspring - inherit - some traits.

▶

17. Twins - be - can - or - identical - non-identical.

▶

18. insects - to eat - adapted - has - Which - plant?

▶ ?

19. roots - deep - The - has - palm - date.

▶

20. desert - plants - What - there - are - in the?

▶ ?

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.

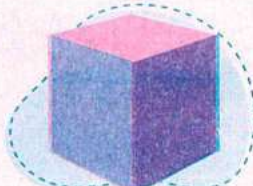


1 Listen and write the missing sounds:

(6Ms)



j _ _ el



c _ b _



tr _ _



gl _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

habitat - offspring - organisms - reproduce - traits

We know that animals have offspring and adapt to their habitat. We can see the same in plants around the world, too. Plants are living ① _____, and they also ② _____ and adapt. Like animals, they pass on ③ _____ to their ④ _____.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Today, we're with our family. We have lots of cousins! Amir is 13. He's a teenager. He's helping his brother, Adam. Adam is building a tower. That's a good boy! My nephew, Tarek, is a baby. My sister is holding him. Look at my niece, Lama. She's learning to walk! I love seeing my family.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Tarek is a (toddler - teenager - baby).
2. Lama is learning to (build - walk - hold).

B Answer these questions:

3. How old is Amir? ▶
4. What is Amir doing? ▶

5. What's Adam doing?

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma couldn't

2. Nesma looked

(B)

☐ a) at her grandma's drawings.

☐ b) get her ideas right.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. The prize will help the school.

()

4. Nesma's grandpa showed her a box of his drawings and plans. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. He used to (played - plays - play) with his friends in the park.

2. He doesn't (eat - eats - eating) in the class.

3. Mom has (go - went - gone) to the market.

4. What did you (buy - buys - bought) at the clothes shop yesterday?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. on - Mondays - I - to school - usually - go.

2. adapted - to - Rabbits - long - ears - have.

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"Your family"

► Ideas to help you:

father - mother - brother



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

draw - shading - dimensional - styles - Artists

It can take a very long time to paint or draw a picture. ① have lots of different ② and ways of working, but one of the basic and most important thing to learn is ③ The picture you are drawing is flat, but the object you are copying is three — ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Sphinx - ancient - temples - Egyptians - statues

The ancient Egyptians made huge sculptures. They built amazing ① The ② of Ramses II at Abu Simbel are nearly 20 meters tall. The Great ③ of Giza is nearly 73 meters long! The ④ Egyptians made small sculptures and artifacts, too. They used gold, wood and colored glass.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

realistic - Geometric - shapes - pattern - create

A geometric ① is made of lots of shapes. We can see these in different places around us every day. People use geometric shapes in art to ② patterns. Geometric ③ can create ④ patterns. These can be very beautiful.

GRAMMAR REVISION

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. There (am - is - are) some books in the bag.
2. There (am - is - are) some cheese in the fridge.
3. There are a lot of (paper - clay - boys) in the classroom.
4. There is lots of (chairs - tables - water) in the bottle.
5. How (many - old - much) cloth is there?
6. How (many - much - tall) temples are there?
7. How much (wood - flowers - trees) is there?
8. How many (metal - juice - sculptures) are there?
9. How much paper (am - is - are) there?
10. How many tools (am - is - are) there?
11. There isn't (some - any - a) water.
12. There are (some - an - any) statues.
13. There (is - are - isn't) some cloth.
14. There (are - aren't - isn't) any paintings.
15. (Am - Is - Are) there models in the museum?
16. (Am - Is - Are) there clay in the art room?

5 Read, order, and write:

1. used - Egyptians - metals - precious - gold - such as.

►

2. learn - like - to - you - do - How?

► ?

3. images - very - The - interesting - are.

►

Unit 8

4. our - culture - learn - about - can - We.

▶

5. some - bowls - are - There - the table - on.

▶

6. some - like - you - Would - water?

▶ ?

7. lots of - are - There - things - to - see.

▶

8. shading - do - you - do - How?

▶ ?

9. tools - some - see - We - will.

▶

10. necklaces - many - How - are - there?

▶ ?

11. use - do - Why - artists - shading?

▶ ?

12. clay - made - of - was - The - sculpture.

▶

13. museum - Today - at - the - are - we.

▶

14. tools - and - Artifacts - interesting - are - very.

▶

15. museums - in - like - I - seeing - things.

▶

Unit 8 Test 2

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



sea crea _____



plea _____



adven _____



trea _____

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

models - tombs - Archaeologists - artifacts - museum

Museums are really interesting. There are lots of paintings, jewelry, sculptures and ① _____ from ancient Egypt in museums today. They are thousands of years old. ② _____ have found important artifacts in the Pharaohs' ③ _____. Some of these artifacts are small ④ _____ of animals, people and boats.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures, jewelry and other artifacts from thousands of years ago. There are many statues and paintings in ancient temples. Because Egypt is a very dry country, the paintings and statues have survived for a long time.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptian art is (famous - unknown - unimportant) all around the world.
2. There are many statues and paintings in ancient (models - temples - objects).

B Answer these questions:

3. What can you see today from thousands of years ago? ► _____
4. Why have the paintings and statues survived for such a long time? ► _____

Test 2

5. What is the opposite of the underlined word "dry"? ▶

6. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma loved

2. Nesma asked her mom

(B)

☐ a) to help her find things.

☐ b) inventing things.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma read about the competition on the school website. ()

4. Grandma found a way to make the car travel upside down. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. How much (books - paper - bags) is there?

2. There (are - aren't - isn't) any portraits.

3. How many bracelets (am - is - are) there?

4. There are (some - any - a) artifacts.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. there - are - books - the library - in - How many? ▶

2. shapes - Geometric - can - realistic - patterns - create. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"Egypt's famous artifacts"

Ideas to help you:

▶ the Pyramids ▶ the Sphinx ▶ temples

▶

▶

▶

▶



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

swallow - medicine - operation - treat - hurts

At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. They need to know what
 ① or how you feel. They might decide to give you
 ② - you drink or swallow this to help you get better. They
 might do surgery - an ③ to make a particular part of your
 body better. When the doctors know what the problem is, they can decide
 on the best way to ④ you.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

be - must - eat - mustn't - time

There are some school rules that you must follow. You must arrive on
 ① for your lessons. You mustn't run in the corridors. You
 ② use your phone in class. You must ③
 kind to your classmates. You mustn't eat or drink during lessons. You
 ④ respect your teachers.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

first aid - paramedics - get - emergency - helicopters

When you are sick, you can go to hospital in a car. In an ①
 you can go in an ambulance. The people who drive ambulances are
 called ② They can give you ③ very quickly. Some
 countries also use ④ to get people to hospital in an emergency.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

healthy - ill - accident - disease - treatment

Do you know what a hospital is? A hospital is a place where people can go for **1** Sometimes people have a **2** or infection that makes them **3** Sometimes they have an injury because of an **4**

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treatments - surgery - ancient - supply - Papyrus

We can learn about what ancient Egyptians did from two of the oldest texts about medicine in the world. The Edwin Smith Papyrus and the Ebers **1** are examples of these oldest texts. The Edwin Smith Papyrus is about **2** in ancient Egypt. The Ebers Papyrus gives **3** for lots of different diseases. It talks about the heart which is the center of the blood **4** in the body.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cast - hurt - helmet - leg - club

Sameh fell off his skateboard at the club. He broke his **1** He had his **2** on, so he didn't **3** his head. His father took him to the doctor. The doctor said he has to wear a **4** for 3 weeks.

GRAMMAR REVISION

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. You get better if you (will have - has - have) some rest.
2. You (must - isn't - mustn't) forget your book at home.
3. If he eats healthy food, he (feel - feels - doesn't feel) healthy.
4. You (must - mustn't - doesn't) keep your room clean.
5. Plants die if you (water - waters - don't water) them.
6. He must (does - do - did) his homework.
7. If he (does - don't do - doesn't do) sports, he gets sick.
8. You (isn't - must - mustn't) arrive at school on time.
9. If my little sister (has - have - had) an accident, she has injuries.
10. You (must - mustn't - doesn't) shout in the classroom.
11. Your arm (got - gets - get), better if you wear a cast.
12. She mustn't (eat - eats - ate) unhealthy food.
13. If you fall off your bike, you (hurting - hurts - hurt) yourself.
14. If you (eat - don't eat - doesn't eat) healthy food, you get better.
15. They must (drank - drink - drinking) lots of water.
16. You mustn't (plays - don't play - play) football in the hospital.
17. You (doesn't - isn't - must) listen to your teacher.

8 Read, order, and write:

1. X-ray - an - had - have - I.



2. yesterday - wearing - Hany - Was - helmet - a?



3. an - has - Who - injury?



Unit 9

4. a hospital - to - been - you - ever - **Have**?

▶ ?

5. see - you - **Can** - sea - the?

▶ ?

6. regularly - medicine - your - take - must - **You**.

▶

7. can see - I - the - sea - and - hear.

▶

8. ancient Egypt - **Doctors** - in - operations - could - do.

▶

9. run - mustn't - **You** - the - corridors - in.

▶

10. is - **The heart** - supply - the blood - the - center of.

▶

11. **You** - can - call - doctors - the - flying!

▶ !

12. respect - must - **You** - teachers - your.

▶

13. masks - face - wear - **Doctors** - nurses - and.

▶

14. sick - are - you - when - happens - **What**?

▶ ?

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



fl _ _ r



fl _ _ er



s _ _



s _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

doctor - operations - equipment - airplanes - hospitals

The Australian flying doctor service has 77 airplanes. There is a lot of medical ① inside, and they can be used as

② Doctors can even do ③

inside the ④!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

When you are sick, you can go to the hospital in a car. In an emergency, you can go in an ambulance. The people who drive ambulances are called paramedics. They can give you first aid very quickly. Some countries also use helicopters to get people to the hospital in an emergency. These are very important and can save lives.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Some countries also use (trains - helicopters - carts) to get people to hospital in an emergency.
2. The people who drive ambulances are called (nurses - patients - paramedics).

B Answer these questions:

3. When can you go to the hospital in an ambulance? ▶
4. What do paramedics do? ▶

Test 3

5. How are helicopters important in an emergency? ▶
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma feels
2. What do the judges

(B)

- ☐ a) think of the girls' invention?
- ☐ b) excited and nervous.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Nesma went to the competition with her mom.
4. Nesma told Laila about the competition.

()
()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. If you (cycle - will cycle - cycles) to school, you have a strong body.
2. You mustn't (played - play - plays) soccer in the hospital.
3. If you (touch - touched - touches) a fire, you get burned.
4. You (must - mustn't - can't) take your medicine when you are sick.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. taken - you - ever - Have - medicine, - Mona? ▶
2. the digestive - is - good - for - Mint - system. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"What do you do when you are sick?"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ hospital ▶ doctor ▶ medicine

▶

▶

▶

▶



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

attracts - repels - field - magnet - north

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel other metal. Magnets have a ① pole and a south pole. The north pole of one magnet ② the south pole of another magnet. The north pole of one magnet ③ the north pole of another magnet. A magnetic ④ is an area around a magnet which pulls objects towards it.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eraser - force - direction - Friction - surfaces

Do you know what friction is? ① is a contact force between two ② We use it every day, from when we put our foot on the ground to run to when we use an ③ to rub out pencil marks. Friction works in the opposite ④ to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more slowly.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nails - swallow - digestive - stomach - attracts

Are magnets useful in farming? We know that cows eat grass, but sometimes they can eat bits of metal that are on the ground in fields, such as ① or bits of wire. Farmers give cows a magnet to ② The magnet stays inside the cow's stomach and ③ all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's ④ system.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

direction - movement - pulling - speed - contact

Friction happens when one object touches another object as it moves. Pushing, ① and friction are ② forces. The two objects have to touch each other for the ③ to happen. The contact can stop, start, or change the ④ or direction of the movement.

GRAMMAR REVISION

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. Mom (would - will - is) be happy if we help her.
2. If he (has - doesn't have - have) enough money, he will buy a new bike.
3. If you don't eat lots of vegetables, you (won't - don't - will) be healthy.
4. He (will help - would help - helps) with the shopping if Mom goes to the supermarket tomorrow.
5. If Grandma (will visit - visits - visited) us on Friday, we will make her a cake.
6. (Will - Does - Is) he get ill if he doesn't eat fruit and vegetables?
7. If you wear your jacket, (do - will - are) you be warm enough?
8. (Did - Do - Will) the boys play football if they find their ball?
9. He'll be tired if he (won't - doesn't - didn't) go to bed early.
10. Will Heba (stay - stays - doesn't stay) at home if it's warm and sunny?
11. Hany (come - comes - will come) to the party if you invite him.
12. Will he go out if he doesn't (feel - felt - feels) well?
13. (Does - Is - Will) Mom be angry if we don't tidy our bedrooms?
14. We (will - won't - are) go to the beach tomorrow if it rains.
15. Will the water be cold if we (putting - puts - put) it in the fridge?
16. If we use a compass, (does - did - will) we get lost?

6 Read, order, and write:

1. have - Magnets - and - a south - a north pole - pole.

▶

2. slow - down - can - Friction - objects.

▶

3. making - adventures - love - I.

▶

4. force - of - a - type - is - Magnetism.

▶

5. a - need - We - will - compass.

▶

6. did - How - do - you - experiment - your?

▶ ?

7. points to - needle - The magnetic - Pole - the - North.

▶

8. magnets - in - useful - hospitals - Are?

▶ ?

9. a ball - bounce - hit - or - can - You.

▶

10. pull force - A - towards - you - something - brings.

▶

11. magnets - use - Computers - information - to - store.

▶

12. at home - and - at school - useful - are - Magnets.

▶

13. We - grass - eat - know - that - cows.

▶

14. cows - give - Farmers - a magnet - to - swallow.

▶

15. forces - contact - are - pulling - Pushing - and.

▶

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



banda _ e



ener _ y



villa _ e



dan _ er

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

read - map - needle - compass - direction

A compass helps you to find your way in the desert. A ① can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic ② which will point to the magnetic North Pole. A ③ always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you ④ a map to show you where to go.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(9Ms)

Magnets are useful in factories. Big magnets can sort out materials for recycling, or even moving old cars. Magnets are useful for computers. Magnets are used to store information in computers. The magnetic areas used for this are narrower than human hair! Magnets are useful for transportation. Some of the most modern train systems use magnets. The train is lifted off the ground, so it has less friction. The magnet keeps it in the right place. The train can travel very quickly!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Some of the most modern (boat - train - bus) systems use magnets.
2. Magnets are useful for (transportation - computers - factories). It helps trains travel quickly.

B Answer these questions:

3. Why are magnets useful in factories?

4. How do we use magnets in computers? ▶
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶
6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Grandma used to be
2. The sun was shining

(B)

- ☐ a) through the window.
- ☐ b) an inventor, too.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma and her dad made the car together.
4. Nesma quickly had a good idea for an invention.

()
()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. If you don't do your homework, your teacher (will be - would be - was) angry.
2. We will be late for school if we (won't - doesn't - don't) hurry.
3. If she (get - gets - doesn't get) up early tomorrow morning, she'll make breakfast for her mom and dad.
4. If he has lots of homework tonight, he (doesn't watch - will watch - won't watch) TV.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. a - magnetic - has - needle - A - compass. ▶
2. you - Can - make - roll - a - marble? ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"How are magnets useful for farming?"

▶ Ideas to help you: ▶ cows ▶ metal ▶ digestive system

▶

▶

▶

▶



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wire - signals - machine - messages - Telegraph

We know a lot of communication types. ① machine was one of them. It was the first way of sending ② around the world quickly. The telegraph machine can send ③ along a ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bike - subway - ferry - journey - transportation

There are a lot of transportation types. A ① is transportation on water. A taxi is good ② in a city. A train is good transportation for a long ③ A ④ is good transportation for carrying a lot of people.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Morse Code - telegrams - communicate - information - letters

The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away. Before the telegraph machine, many ① were sent. These could take a long time to arrive. Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called ② In telegrams, important ③ was written and read quickly. They were written in ④

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

messages - delivered - paper - office - understood

Morse Code was invented by Samuel Morse. The code was
 ① by the person who worked in the telegraph
 ② They wrote the messages on ③ Then
 the paper messages were ④ to the correct person.

GRAMMAR REVISION

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. The code (is invented - were invented - was invented) by Morse.
2. Messages sent by telegraph machine were (calling - called - call) telegrams.
3. Glass (is made - are made - makes) from sand.
4. Arabic (speaks - spoken - is spoken) in Egypt.
5. Lots of sweets are (ate - eaten - eating) by children every day.
6. Fish (find - finding - are found) in water.
7. They were (helping - helped - helps) by their teacher.
8. The pictures (took - were taken - was taken) by the art teacher.
9. This book (wrote - was written - is written) by a famous writer last year.
10. Her clothes (bought - was bought - were bought) at the best shops.
11. Some kites (were flown - flew - is flown) by my cousins.
12. The first email (sent - is sent - was sent) in 1971.
13. The photos are (upload - uploads - uploaded) onto a website.
14. Videos on the internet (is - was - are) seen by many people.
15. Tablets (is - are - was) used in some school lessons.

6 Read, order, and write:

1. Code - Morse - Samuel Morse - invented - by - was.

Unit 11

2. people - by - used - were - Telegrams.



3. a - smartphone - it - Is?



?

4. transportation - is - A - ferry - water - on.



5. wants - Sara's mom - the - journey - comfortable - to be.



6. the - most - cause - Planes - pollution.



7. comfortable - are - the - most - Planes.



8. isn't - There - for - much room - bags - lots of.



9. a lot of - took - Sara - with - her - clothes.



10. is - What - machine - a - telegraph?



?

11. telephone - The - was - in - 1876 - invented.



12. make - I'll - message - an - audio.



13. is - usually - The - train - crowded - very.



14. travel - wants - to - Sara's dad - quickly.



Unit 11 Test 5

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



(6Ms)



dio message



dr



str



M se Code

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

quicker - telephone - email - imagine - communication

Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called telegrams. Telegrams were replaced by other forms of ① . In 1876, the ② was invented. People could speak directly to people far away. The first ③ was sent in 1971. Communication around the world is now ④ than people in the past ever imagined!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(9Ms)

The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away. Before the telegraph machine, many letters were sent. These could take a long time to arrive. Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called telegrams. In telegrams, important information was written and read quickly. They were written in Morse Code.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Before the telegraph machine, many (emails - photos - letters) were sent.
- Letters could take a (quick - long - short) time to arrive.

B Answer these questions:

- How was the telegraph machine useful? ▶
- How were telegrams written? ▶

Test 5

5. What is the opposite of the underlined word "easy"?

6. Give a suitable title to the text.

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma had an idea

2. What inventions

(B)

☐ a) do they see?

☐ b) about magnets.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Laila decides to write a diary about the competition.

()

4. Grandma used to be an inventor.

()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. Sweets (is - are - was) given to the children.

2. The room was (clean - cleaning - cleaned) by the caretaker.

3. Bananas (eat - are eaten - have eaten) by monkeys and humans.

4. The messages (are written - was written - were written) by Ali yesterday.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. are - The photos - a - website - uploaded - onto.

2. video call - prefer - to - I - friends - my!

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"Your favorite means of transport"

Ideas to help you: ▶ bus ▶ car ▶ train



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

competition - medal - interviewed - community - newspaper

Hany is at school today. He is looking at the school **1**
 There's news about the school and the sports **2** in the newspaper.
 There's a photo of the headteacher. Hany **3** Youssef in the
 newspaper. In the photo of the interview, Youssef is wearing his swimming
 competition **4** Hana wrote a cartoon for the back page.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

newspapers - layout - shops - specialists - printing

Making a newspaper is very hard work. Journalists, editors and
1 specialists have to work very quickly to get the
 newspapers ready. When the files are ready, they are sent to the
2 press. The **3** are packed overnight and
 they are sent to **4** all over the country for people to buy it
 in the morning.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

presenters - listening - program - questions - radio

I'm Gamila. My mom likes listening to the news on the **1**
 when she is in her car or at home. The radio **2** explain
 everything very clearly. Sometimes people can phone in and ask questions
 or say what they think in a radio **3** It's interesting,
 but I like **4** to music in the car!

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hospital - build - equipment - medical - news

Did you see today's newspaper? There's an important piece of **①** for our city in the newspaper today. It's about a new hospital. The new **②** in the center of the city opened today. It has taken two years to **③**, and it has some of the most modern **④** equipment in the country.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

printed - metal - newspaper - production - press

Production is an important step for making a newspaper. When the files of the newspaper are ready, they are sent to the printing **①**. The pages of the newspaper are made into an image on a thin **②** plate. Then big rolls of paper go through machines over the metal plates. The newspaper is **③**! This process is called **④**.

GRAMMAR REVISION

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. He (was - were - has) making a sandwich.
2. They (was - were - are) going to the train station at six last evening.
3. We (have - was - were) running together.
4. (Was - Were - Is) she going to the park at two yesterday morning?
5. They were (look - looks - looking) at the photos.
6. Their parents were (visited - visiting - visit) a friend in hospital.

7. Emy was (making - make - makes) her bed.
8. Maged (is ride - was riding - rides) his bike yesterday.
9. Heba and her friend (read - are reading - were reading) a new story last evening.
10. Why (are - was - were) you running, Tamer?
11. Sherif was (walk - walks - walking) in the park.
12. She (were running - was running - are running) on the track yesterday morning.

7 Read, order, and write:

1. have - your - school - Does - newspaper - a?

▶ ?

2. headteacher - yesterday - the - interviewed - I.

▶

3. a photo - There's - of you - the - article - with.

▶

4. was - Sherif - sitting - the - floor - on!

▶ !

5. on - social - the news - reads - Who - media?

▶ ?

6. was - Tarek - playing - with - Omar - tennis.

▶

Unit 12

7. stories - read - The newsreaders - the world - from - around.

▶

8. Lots of - newspapers - and - stories - articles - have.

▶

9. making - were - The - children - breakfast.

▶

10. talking - to - was - Walid - Why - Mr Hassan?

▶ ?

11. my - geography - was - reading - I - book.

▶

12. story - a - news - writes - The journalist.

▶

13. overnight - packed - are - The newspapers.

▶

14. articles - the - sport - reading - likes - Dad.

▶

15. can - People - stories - share - media - on social.

▶

16. likes - Who - interviews - watching - people - with?

▶ ?

Unit 12 Test 6

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (59) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



cam _ _



vehic _ _



artic _ _



hospit _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

layout - distributed - editor - newspaper - journalist

A newspaper takes many steps before you buy at a shop. A ① writes about an interesting event. The journalist writes a news story. The managing ② chooses which news stories to put in the newspaper. Then the story goes to the ③ specialist who puts it on the page. Then a headline, photo, caption and byline are put with the story. Finally, the newspaper is printed and ④ to shops.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

I'm Gamila. My mom likes listening to the news on the radio when she is in her car or at home. The radio presenters explain everything very clearly. Sometimes people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio program. It's interesting, but I like listening to the music in the car!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sometimes people can phone in and (take photos - send messages - ask questions) in a radio program.
2. Gamila likes listening to (news - music - presenters) in the car!

B Answer these questions:

3. What does Gamila's mom like?

Test 6

4. What do the radio presenters do? ▶
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶
6. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Why did the girls
2. There was a medal

(B)

- ☐ a) on their car!
- ☐ b) use magnets?

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. The old box belongs to Nesma's grandma.
4. Nesma showed her mom the papers and drawings.

{ }

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. I (am - was - were) writing an article at eight last night.
2. The children were (make - made - making) breakfast for Dad.
3. She (is cooking - was cooking - were cooking) dinner at five yesterday.
4. Why was she (travels - traveling - travel) by train?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. television - on - the - news - watches - Who? ▶
2. a newspaper - reading - morning - yesterday - was - Mom. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"Your favorite sport"

▶ Ideas to help you: ▶ sport ▶ club ▶ friends

▶

▶

▶

▶



Part

2

**Revision
Tests**



Revision Test 1

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



(6Ms)



n _ _



J _ n _



trea _ _



gl _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

amazing - ponds - desert - adapt - rainforest

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are tall trees in the ① _____, cactus plants in the ② _____, water lilies in ③ _____, and many wild plants and flowers that we see every day around us. They are all different, and they ④ _____ to their environment in amazing ways.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(9Ms)

Good pupils look left and right before they cross the road. They don't play in the street. They play at school or at the club. They wash their hands before they eat. They do their homework. They listen to their fathers, mothers and teachers. Good pupils pray and don't tell lies.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Good pupils (do - play - swim) their homework.
2. Good pupils wash their hands (after - before - during) they eat.

B Answer these questions:

3. What do good pupils do before they cross the street? ▶
4. Where do good pupils play? ▶

5. Who do good pupils listen to? ▶
 6. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma looked at books
 2. There were plans for a vehicle

(B)

- ☐ a) that used a compass to navigate.
☐ b) and websites for ideas.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Laila will get the wood for the model car. ()
 4. The girls were at the competition on Monday. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. There (am - is - are) some water in the bottle.
 2. If my little sister (has - have - had) an accident, she cries.
 3. Telegrams were (write - wrote - written) in Morse Code.
 4. Dalia used to (has - have - had) short hair when she was young.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. ancient Egypt - Doctors - in - operations - could - do. ▶
 2. doing - yesterday - morning - children - the - were - What? ▶ ?

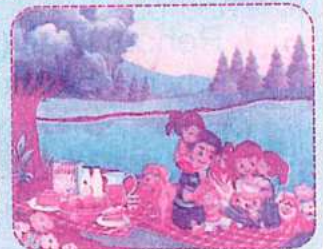
7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"My weekend"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ park ▶ family ▶ eat



Revision Test 2

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.

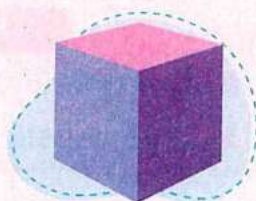
1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



(6Ms)



j _ _ el



c _ b _



adven _ _ _



mea _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

precious - artifacts - Paintings - afterlife - metals

There are many statues and paintings in ancient temples. ① in tombs often showed pictures of the person in the ② Small sculptures and artifacts were made, too. These were very detailed and beautiful. Egyptians used precious ③ such as gold, as well as wood and colored glass. The ④ were often colorful.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Every Thursday, my mother goes shopping. My sister, Reham, sometimes goes with her. There are a lot of vegetables and fruits in the market. My mother buys tomatoes, peas, potatoes and lettuce. She also buys bananas, apples and strawberries. She buys my sister an ice cream and buys me a bottle of orange juice.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Reham likes (sweets - cakes - ice cream).
2. My mother buys me (oranges - ice cream - orange juice).

B Answer these questions:

3. When does the mother go to the market? ▶
4. What vegetables does the mother buy? ▶

5. What fruits does the mother buy? ▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Grandma used to be
2. Nesma found a drawing

(B)

- ☐ a) of a small toy car.
- ☐ b) an inventor, too.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. The car has a small spring inside it. ()
4. Nesma asked her mom to help her find the things they needed. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. If he (eats - don't eat - doesn't eat) healthy food, he gets sick.
2. They used to (live - lives - lived) in a flat. Now, they live in a house.
3. There is a lot of (ruler - books - paper) on the table.
4. Computers (was used - are used - is used) in many offices and businesses.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. is - usually - The - train - crowded - very. ▶
2. must - at school - You - arrive - time - on. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"At the library"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ interesting books ▶ magazines
▶ new information



Revision Test 3

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



(6Ms)



gl _ _



wr _ _



r _ _



chan _ e

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

syringe - stethoscope - hearts - blood - patients

A hospital is a place where people can go for treatment. At a hospital, doctors and nurses must wear face masks to protect their ① Doctors also use stethoscopes to listen to patients' ② They can check the health of heart with a ③ pressure monitor. A doctor or nurse can put medicine in your body with a ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Dolphins are large sea animals. They are similar to fish. Some dolphins live in rivers, and some live in the sea. Dolphins make noises to talk to each other. The meat of sea dolphins is an important food for people in many countries. Dolphins are in danger. They are very intelligent and friendly animals.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Dolphins make noises to (swim - talk - kill) to each other.
2. Dolphins are (intelligent - small - dangerous) sea animals.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where do dolphins live?
4. Why do people kill dolphins?



5. Describe the dolphins.

6. Summarize the text in two sentences.

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. The two girls made

2. The car traveled along,

(B)

☐ a) up, and upside down!

☐ b) a frame for the car to travel on.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. Mom will write a diary about the competition just like her grandma. ()

4. There was a competition for the best invention. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. How (many - much - old) pencils are there?

2. The telegraph machine (invented - is invented - was invented) in the 1830s.

3. He didn't (use - used - using) to watch cartoons when he was young.

4. Your arm (got - gets - get) better if you wear a cast.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. you - ever - Have - an - accident - had? ▶

2. are - used - Computers - offices - in - many. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"My father's job"

Ideas to help you: ▶ doctor ▶ hospital ▶ sick

▶
▶
▶
▶



Revision Test 4

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and write the missing sounds:

(6Ms)



sea crea _ _ _



w _ _ _



wh _ _ _



banda _ e

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

movement - friction - contact - forces - speed

Friction happens when one object touches another object as it moves. Pushing, pulling and ① are contact forces. The two objects have to touch each other for the movement to happen. The ② can stop, start, or change the ③ or direction of the ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Mr. Ahmed's family went to the beach by car last week. They arrived at ten. The beach was very beautiful. They swam, ran and played there. At two, they had lunch. They had meat, rice and fruit. Dad was angry. Heba and Tamer, his children, dropped some litter on the beach. He asked them to put the litter in a bin. They went home at eight.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr. Ahmed has got (two boys - two girls - a boy and a girl).
2. They went to the beach by (car - bus - train).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where did Mr. Ahmed and his family go last week? ▶
4. Why was Mr. Ahmed angry? ▶

5. How long did the family stay on the beach? ▶

6. When did Mr. Ahmed and his family go home? ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma looked

2. Nesma didn't know

(B)

☐ a) what to make.

☐ b) at her grandma's drawings.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. There's a machine that can help a farmer get water to lots of animals. ()

4. Nesma thought that magnets could make the car stay on the track. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. How does your father (go - goes - going) to work?

2. (Am - Is - Are) there sculptures in the museum?

3. Will this ball roll down the slope if she (push - pushes - will push) it?

4. Billions of emails (are sent - was sent - send) every day.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. artifacts - lots - of - found - have - Archaeologists. ▶

2. was - invented - television - the - first - When? ▶ ?

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"At the museum"

Ideas to help you:

▶ artifacts

▶ paintings

▶ sculptures

▶
▶
▶
▶



Revision Test 5

Total

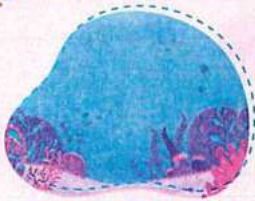
30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



s _ _ _



s _ _ _



villa _ e



y _ _ n

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

pollution - animal - cart - magnets - transportation

There are a lot of transportation types. The ① is an old type of transportation. You need an ② for this. Old steam trains used fossil fuels and caused ③ Modern high-speed trains can use ④ and go very fast.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Nader was telling Sherif his favorite dreams. In his dream, he was a businessman. He had a big office in Cairo. Twenty people were working in his office in Cairo. He had lots of money. He was giving some money to his family. He was helping his friends. He was using some money to build a new hospital for poor people. He was traveling to different countries. He was married with three children. Nader was very happy in his dream.

A Choose the correct answer:

- There were (six - four - five) people in Nader's family.
- In his dream, Nader was (going to - building - working) a hospital.

B Answer these questions:

- What was Nader telling Sherif? ►
- Who was Nader giving money to? ►

5. What was Nader's job in his dream? ►

6. Was Nader happy in his dream? ►

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. There were amazing ideas

2. Nesma loved

(B)

☐ a) inventing things.

☐ b) and models in the competition.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma knew that she wanted to make a toy. ()

4. At first, the car wasn't fast enough. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. There are (some - any - a) bracelets.

2. Has she (do - did - done) her homework?

3. You (must - mustn't - can't) get lots of rest when you are sick.

4. What will happen if we (move - moves - moved) the book?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. like - you - Do - the past - learning - about? ►

2. never - climbed - I've - before - a - mountain. ►

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"My summer holiday"

► Ideas to help you: ► beaches ► play ► swim

►

►

►

►



Revision Test 6

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (60) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



bl _ _



fl _ _ r



fl _ _ er



_ iraffe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

advertising - distribution - news - editors - layout

Making a newspaper is very hard work. Journalists, ① and ② specialists have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, ③, production and ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Children usually learn from other people, such as their families, their friends and the children they play with. They learn to do things with their hands, to speak and to play. They may go fishing and spend a lot of time playing or watching TV. They often go to bed late at night. They also like listening to music.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Children usually learn from (others - another - other) people.
- Children (like - hate - make) listening to music.

B Answer these questions:

- How do children spend their time?
- When do children go to bed?

▶
▶

5. What do children learn from other people? ▶

6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma went to the
2. Nesma decides to write

(B)

- ☐ a) a diary about the competition.
- ☐ b) competition with Laila.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. There were plans for a toy that used a compass to navigate. ()
4. Rescue workers could travel in dangerous places to help people. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. There isn't (some - any - lot) clay.
2. Mr. Ashraf (help - helps - helping) the students in the class.
3. She mustn't (have - has - had) more than three visitors.
4. If she touches the shape, the magnet (will pick - pick - is picking) it up.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. use - do - Why - artists - shading - realistic? ▶
2. a - magnetic - has - A - compass - needle. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"A trip to the Pyramids"

▶ Ideas to help you: ▶ weather ▶ enjoy sunshine ▶ take photographs

▶
 ▶
 ▶
 ▶



Revision Test 7

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

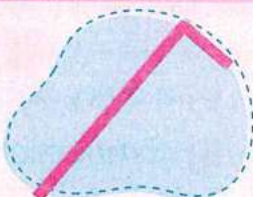


(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



sh _ _ t



str _ _



cam _ _



music _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

leaf - species - environment - survive - characteristics

All organisms have to adapt to their environment. All ① of animals and plants have their own ② and behave in ways that help them to ③ Rabbits adapted to have long ears. Some insects have adapted to look like a ④ so other animals don't eat it.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(9Ms)

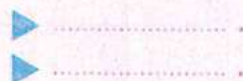
Samy and Hesham went to a restaurant for lunch yesterday. They sat at a big table. The waiter gave them the menu. It is the list of food you can have at a restaurant. Samy ordered chicken, rice and potatoes. Hesham ordered fish and fruit salad. Samy drank tea, but Hesham drank fruit juice. They liked the food very much. The place was clean and comfortable. The waiters were also very nice.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Samy and Hesham went to a restaurant for (breakfast - lunch - dinner).
2. Potatoes are a kind of (fruit - dessert - vegetable).

B Answer these questions:

3. What did Samy and Hesham order at the restaurant?
4. What did the waiter give Samy and Hesham?



5. Why did they like the place? ►
6. Summarize the text in two sentences. ►

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. The girls were at
2. Nesma can use solar energy

(B)

- ☐ a) to get more power.
- ☐ b) the competition on Thursday.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma showed her grandma the papers and drawings. ()
4. Grandma used to be a doctor. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. If he (doesn't go - will not go - don't go) that way, he'll get lost.
2. She (learns - is learning - learn) English at the moment.
3. You (must - mustn't - can't) take your medicine.
4. There (are - aren't - isn't) any portraits.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. clay - made - of - was - The - sculpture. ►
2. schools - and - magnets - in - useful - hospitals - Are? ► ?

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"My birthday party"

Ideas to help you: ► cake ► presents ► invited my friends



Revision Test 8

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

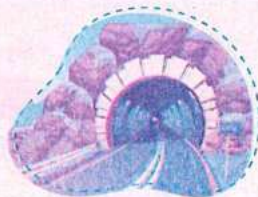
1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



(6Ms)



dio message



tunn



artic



hospit

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

heart - surgeons - organs - operations - injuries

Doctors and surgeons were very important in ancient Egypt. They could do ① to help people get better after ② There were treatments for lots of different diseases. They knew how the ③ is the center of the blood supply in the body, and they gave advice about problems with skin, teeth, eyes and other ④

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Ali and Hassan are twins. They are nine years old, and they are in grade three. Every Friday, they go to the zoo. They go on foot with their parents because the zoo is near their house. They see three elephants, lions and monkeys. They also see the giraffe, with its long neck, eating carrots and lettuce. They go back home in the evening. They always have a good time there.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali is Hassan's (friend - cousin - brother).
2. They see elephants, lions, monkeys and the (tiger - giraffe - fox) at the zoo.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where do Ali and Hassan go every Friday? ▶
4. How old are Ali and Hassan? ▶

5. How do Ali and Hassan go to the zoo?
 6. Describe the giraffe.



The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. Nesma was reading
 2. Nesma had an idea

(B)

- ☐ a) about magnets.
☐ b) the school newsletter.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma knew that she wanted to take part in the competition. ()
 4. Nesma was learning about magnets in art lessons at school. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. Has she ever (see - saw - seen) a snake?
 2. If he (use - will use - uses) a compass, will he get lost?
 3. The telegraph machine messages were (calling - called - call) telegrams.
 4. Why was she (travels - traveling - travel) by bus yesterday?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. roots - deep - has - The - date - palm. ▶
 2. did - How - do - you - experiment - your? ▶?

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The weather in Egypt"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ hot ▶ cool ▶ cold

▶
 ▶
 ▶
 ▶



Revision Test 9

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

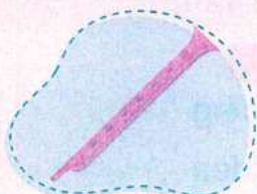
1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



dan _ er



vehic _ _



fl _ t _



n _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

information - useful - X-ray - magnetic - bones

In hospitals, an MRI scan (magnetic resonance imaging) uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organs inside our bodies. An ① can take pictures of ②, but an MRI scan can give doctors more ③ The scans are very ④ and save many lives.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Reem is 8 years old. She is in Primary two. Her father is a teacher of English, and her mother is a doctor. She lives in Cairo. She has one brother and two sisters. Her brother's name is Youssef. He is ten years old. Every morning, Reem and Youssef go to school by bus. They love their school and teachers very much.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Reem and Youssef go to school by (car - bus - bike).
2. Reem has (four - two - three) sisters.

B Answer these questions:

3. How old is Reem?
4. Where does Reem live?

▶

▶

5. What is Reem's father's job? ▶

6. How old is Youssef? ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. There was a competition
2. There were plans for a vehicle

(B)

- ☐ a) that used a compass to navigate.
- ☐ b) for the best invention.

B Read and write (Yes) or (No):

3. Nesma will get the wood for the model car. ()

4. The car traveled along, up, and upside down! ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. We (~~are~~ - was - were) playing together last weekend.
2. Will the water (~~is~~ - are - be) cold if we put it in the fridge?
3. He didn't (~~climb~~ - climbed - climbs) the tree yesterday.
4. (~~Were~~ - Are - Was) telegrams used now?

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. letters - machines - ~~Are~~ - on - telegraph - sent? ▶
2. wrote - ~~Hana~~ - for - a cartoon - the - back page. ▶

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"Who am I?"

Ideas to help you: ▶ name ▶ age ▶ grade

▶

▶

▶

▶



Revision Test 10

Total

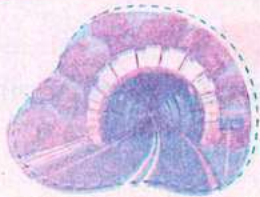
30

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds:



tunn _ _ _



tr _ _ _



plea _ _ _



h _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

clicks - telegram - telegraph - machine - Morse Code

Communication in the past was more difficult than communication today. A ① machine was an important machine. It was the first way of sending messages around the world quickly. It used ② That's a code of short and long ③ The telegraph ④ can send signals along a wire.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9Ms)

Every summer holiday, Saber goes to Alexandria with his family. They usually spend two weeks there. They stay in a small hotel near the sea at Sidi Bishr. Every morning, they go to the sea. Saber's children play, run and swim. Their mother watches them. Their father spends his time fishing. At 3 o'clock, they go to the hotel to have their lunch.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Saber's family spends (seven - fourteen - ten) days in Alexandria.
2. Saber spends his time (eating - playing - fishing).

B Answer these questions:

3. When does Saber go to Alexandria?
4. Where does the family have lunch?

▶
▶

5. Where does the family stay? ▶
 6. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

The Reader (Nesma's Invention)

4 A: Read and match:

(2Ms)

(A)

1. If there was an earthquake,
 2. She took out her pens

(B)

- ☐ a) and paper, and started to draw.
☐ b) roads might be damaged.

B Read and write T (True) or F (False):

3. There were letters and a diary, drawings and photos in the old box. ()
 4. There were plans for a plane that used a compass to navigate. ()

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. What (does - will - are) we see if we mix these liquids?
 2. I (am - was - were) writing a short story last week.
 3. He doesn't (eat - eats - eating) in the class.
 4. The children were (make - made - making) breakfast for Dad.

6 Read, order, and write:

(2Ms)

1. to - have - ears - Rabbits - long - adapted.
 2. some - infections - can - better - Honey - make.

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements:

(7Ms)

"The first-aid kit"

► Ideas to help you: ► injured ► help ► bandages

▶
 ▶
 ▶
 ▶



Part 3

Listening Scripts



Unit 7 Test 1



Listening Script

jewel

cube

true

glue

Unit 8 Test 2



Listening Script

sea creature

pleasure

adventure

treasure

Unit 9 Test 3



Listening Script

flour

flower

sea

see

Unit 10 Test 4



Listening Script

bandage

energy

village

danger

Unit 11 Test 5



Listening Script

audio message

draw

straw

Morse Code

Unit 12 Test 6



Listening Script

camel

vehicle

article

hospital

Revision Test 1



Listening Script

new

June

treasure

glue

Revision Test 2



Listening Script

jewel

cube

adventure

measure

Revision Test 3



Listening Script

glue

write

right

change

Revision Test 4



Listening Script

sea creature

wear

where

bandage

Revision Test 5



Listening Script

sea

see

village

yawn

Revision Test 6



Listening Script

blue

flour

flower

giraffe

Revision Test 7



Listening Script

short

straw

camel

musical

Revision Test 8



Listening Script

audio message

tunnel

article

hospital

Revision Test 9



Listening Script

danger

vehicle

flute

new

Revision Test 10



Listening Script

tunnel

true

pleasure

hear

Part 4



Answers Key

Part
1

The Set Book

Unit (7)

Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- cousins 2- teenager
3- tower 4- nephew

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- riding 2- help 3- buy 4- cooking
5- doesn't 6- reads 7- go 8- doing
9- don't 10- works 11- is talking
12- are running 13- does 14- are singing
15- eat 16- going 17- is learning
18- go 19- helps 20- read

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- visited 2- climbed 3- couldn't
4- painted 5- watched 6- seen
7- has worked 8- helped 9- did
10- walked 11- do 12- Have 13- climb
14- Has 15- have 16- done 17- swum
18- go 19- read 20- wear

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Where are the family this week?
2- Today we are with our family.
3- We have lots of uncles and cousins!
4- Adam is building a tall tower.
5- Lama is learning to walk!
6- I love seeing my family.
7- Last month we visited my grandparents.
8- What are you doing now, Tarek?
9- I've never climbed a mountain before.
10- What did you do last summer?

5 Write a paragraph:

Today my family and I are at home. My dad is reading my brother a story. We are helping our mom clean the house. My sister is cooking the food with mom.

Lessons 3 4 5

1 Listen and write the missing sound.:

- 1- flute 2- jewel 3- cube
4- blue 5- glue 6- true

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- siblings 2- Twins
3- triplets 4- quadruplets

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- unhappy 2- happy
3- wears 4- skateboard

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- used 2- to 3- have 4- live
5- didn't 6- play 7- use 8- wear
9- have 10- use 11- couldn't
12- can 13- couldn't

5 Choose the correct answer:

- ew ; flew - new - jewel
- u- e; cube - flute - June - used to
- ue; true - blue - glue

6 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- the same 2- three siblings
3- Identical means that they are exactly the same.
4- It means different.
5- That's four.
6- Twins often think and behave in similar ways.

7 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Does Malak wear glasses at school?
2- I used to have short hair.
3- Do you know any twins?
4- I used to play the flute.
5- Does Younis have dark curly hair?
6- Twins are two siblings.
7- Does Malak have dark hair?
8- How tall is Younis?

8 Write the correct punctuation:

- 1- What do you usually do on weekends?
2- Stop! That road is dangerous!
3- Tarek didn't use to speak English.
4- I like reading books, watching TV and playing with my brothers.
5- Did Dad use to walk to school?
6- That was an amazing game!
7- I used to have long hair, but now my hair is short.

9 Write a paragraph:

My little brother used to play with toys. He didn't use to talk or walk. When he was 2, he didn't use to read or write. When he was 5, he used to ride a bike.

Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- organisms 2- characteristics
3- survive 4- adapted

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- inherit 2- traits 3- fur 4- litter

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- ears 2- predators
3- Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming from.
4- The trait of having long ears.
5- It means bigger animals that hunt and eat smaller animals.
6- Over time, rabbits with longer ears become safer and healthier. They could live for longer and have more litter. They pass this trait to their offspring
- 4 Read, order, and write:
1- Offspring inherit some traits from their parents.
2- Rabbits have adapted to have long ears.
3- All organisms have to adapt to their environment.
4- All species of animals have their own characteristics.

Lesson 7 Part 1

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- reproduce 1- pollen
3- insects 4- cells

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- grains 2- seeds
3- parent 4- differences

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Do all plants have flowers?
2- Plants are living organisms.
3- The pollen grains produce flowers.
4- How do plants make seeds?
5- Plants adapt and reproduce.
6- Most plants are flowering.
7- How do pollen grains travel?
8- How many ways do plants reproduce in?

Lesson 7 Part 2

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- rainforest 2- desert

3- ponds

4- wild

2 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Where do these plants grow?
2- Rainforest trees are very tall.
3- The water lily has flat leaves.
4- The date palm has deep roots.
5- The date palm gets water from underground.
6- A water lily has leaves on water.
7- How has the lily adapted to water?

Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- new 2- June
3- blue 4- flew

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- characteristic 2- predators
3- ears 4- survival

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- rainforest 2- adapt
3- There are cactus plants in the desert.
4- Water lilies grow in ponds.
5- The opposite of different is similar.
6- The Variety of Plants

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- make 2- look 3- used 4- go

5 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Why do rabbits have long ears?
2- The plant turns the insect into food.

6 Write a paragraph:

When I was young, I didn't use to play tennis. I used to eat chips. I didn't use to visit my friends. I used to help mom.

Unit (8)

Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- museum 2- jewelry
3- clay 4- pencils

2 Read and match:

- 1) c 2) d 3) e 4) a 5) b 6) f

3 Choose the correct word:

- 1- is 2- are 3- paper 4- cups
5- many 6- much 7- bowls 8- paper

- 9- are 10- is 11- isn't 12- beds
13- Is 14- Are 15- cloth 16- chairs
17- some 18- any 19- aren't 20- is

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- cups 2- paper 3- wood 4- bowls
5- water 6- chairs 7- clay

5 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Today, we're at the museum.
2- Would you like some water?
3- A sculpture looked like a person.
4- There are many portraits.
5- How much paper is there?
6- There isn't enough paper.
7- The sculpture was made of clay.
8- There aren't any books.
9- How many bracelets are there?
This bracelet is made of wood.

10 Write a paragraph:

I went on a trip to the museum last month. I went with my friends and my teachers. We went by bus. We saw many artifacts. We saw many tourists. We took some photos.

Lessons 3 4

1 Listen and write:

sea creature - adventure - measure /
treasure - pleasure - sculpture

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- past 2- mistakes
3- understand 4- culture

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- I like seeing things in museums.
2- Do you like learning about the past?
3- I prefer looking at things in books.
4- Where's your parents' house?
5- Why do we learn about the past?
6- I love learning about artifacts from the past.

4 Look and write the apostrophes:

- 1- It's Zayn's football.
2- I've got some clay and I'm making a cup.
3- There aren't any sculptures in front of the museum.
4- Leila's book is on the teacher's desk.
5- Where's your parents' house?

5 Write a paragraph:

I'm learning about the past. I love learning about artifacts from the past. Artifacts and sculptures are interesting. We go to the museum to see very old things from the past.

Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Archaeologists 2- tombs
3- afterlife 4- models

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- paintings 2- tombs
3- detailed 4- gold

3 Read the following text:

- 1- museums 2- sculptures
3- Archaeologists have found important artifacts.
4- It is nearly 73 meters long.
5- They used gold, wood and colored glass.
6- Art in Ancient Egypt

4 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Egypt is a very dry country.
2- Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts.
3- The artifacts were often colorful.
4- Ancient Egyptian art is very famous.
5- There are many statues in ancient temples.
6- Why did people put models in tombs?

Lessons 6 7 8

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- repeat 2- ruler
3- measure 4- angles

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- realistic 2- dark
2- shading 4- lines

3 Read the following text:

- 1- shapes 2- realistic
3- To create patterns.
4- They used geometric patterns in jewelry and in paintings.
5- We can see these in different places and buildings around us every day.
6- Geometric Patterns

Answers Key

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- How do you do shading?
- 2- Why do artists use shading?
- 3- People use geometric shapes in art.
- 4- What shapes can you see?
- 5- Where do you see patterns every day?
- 6- Many buildings have tiles in geometric patterns.
- 7- The colors and styles are beautiful.

Unit (8) Test (2)

1 Listen and write:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1- treasure | 2- adventure |
| 3- sculpture | 4- measure |

2 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1- geometric | 2- decorate |
| 3- styles | 4- jewelry |

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- Artists
- 2- flat
- 3- It can take a very long time.
- 4- Shading
- 5- Arts have lots of different styles and ways of working. Shading is the most important thing to learn.
- 6- Shading

5 Choose the correct word:

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1- many | 2- any |
| 7- are | 8- paper |

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Ancient Egyptians made enormous sculptures.
- 2- Why do we learn about the past?

7 Write a paragraph:

There are lots of beautiful things in the Egyptian Museum. We can see artifacts. We can see mummies. We can see sculptures. We can see different jewelry.

Unit (9)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1- hospital | 2- injury |
| 3- elbow | 4- cast |

2 Read the following text:

- 1) treatment
- 2) scan
- 3) People go to hospitals for treatment.

- 4) I will see a doctor or a nurse.

- 5) To find out what's wrong with you.

- 6) Hospitals are places for treatment.

Doctors and nurses have ways to find out what is wrong and give medicine.

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Where are Hany and Hana?
- 2- We're at the hospital.
- 3- Have you ever had an accident?
- 4- Was Hany wearing a helmet?
- 5- Hany has an injury.
- 6- What accident did Hany have?
- 7- I don't want to wear a cast!
- 8- Have you ever been to a hospital?

4 Write paragraph:

I have never had an accident. But I have been to hospital. I have taken medicine. But I have never had a surgery.

Lessons 2 3

1 Listen and write:

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|
| 1- sea | 2- see | 3- flour |
| 4- flower | 5- right | 6- write |

2 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1- accident | 2- hurts |
| 3- breaks | 4- gets |

3 Choose the word:

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|---------|
| 1- hurt | 2- touch | 3- take | 4- wear |
| 5- has | 6- don't water | 7- don't eat | |
| 8- cycle | 9- have | 10- gets | |
| 11- mix | 12- add | 13- becomes | |
| 14- don't | | | |

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- If we don't eat, we get hungry.
- 2- Where does it hurt?
- 3- If you heat ice, it melts.
- 4- Can you write your name, please?
- 5- I will write down your temperature.

5 Read, check in a dictionary:

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1- flower | 2- plane | 3- plain | 4- flour |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1- must | 2- take |
| 3- rest | 4- mustn't |

2 Choose the correct word:

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| 1- mustn't | 2- must | 3- mustn't | 4- must |
|------------|---------|------------|---------|

Step Ahead

- 5- must 6- have 7- must 8- mustn't
9- listen 10- mustn't 11- mustn't 12- must

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- You must take your medicine.
- 2- You must arrive on time.
- 3- You mustn't play loud music.
- 4- Hospitals must be very clean.
- 5- You must respect your teachers.
- 6- You mustn't talk unless you raise your hand.

4 Write a paragraph:

She might be hungry in hospital. I can take fruit and sweets for her. She might be thirsty in hospital. I can take water for her. She might be bored in hospital. I can take some books for her.

Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- masks 2- stethoscopes
- 3- monitor 4- syringe

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- first-aid kit 2- equipment
- 3- bandages 4- cut

3 Write a paragraph:

There are many things doctors and nurses use in hospitals. Doctors and nurses must wear face masks to protect their patients. Doctors also use stethoscopes to listen to patients' hearts. They can check the health of heart with a blood pressure monitor. A doctor or nurse can put medicine in your body with syringe.

Lesson 7

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- herbs 2- digestive
- 3- honey 4- science

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- treatments 2- blood
- 3- skin 4- organs

3 Read the following text:

- 1) bones 2) skin
- 3) The Edwin Smith Papyrus and the Ebers Papyrus are two of the oldest texts in the world.
- 4) The Edwin Smith Papyrus is about surgery in ancient Egypt.

- 5) The Ebers Papyrus talks about the heart and the body's blood supply.
- 6) Medicine in ancient Egypt

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations.
- 2- Aloe can help with burns.
- 3- Honey can make some infections better.
- 4- Ancient Egyptians used herbs in medicine.

Lesson 8

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- emergency 2- paramedics
- 3- helicopters 4- airplanes

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- ambulance 2- first-aid
- 3- equipment 4- helicopters

3 Read the following text:

- 1) ambulances 2) equipment
- 3) Because Australia is such a big country that many people live hundreds of kilometers away from the nearest hospital.
- 4) There are 77 airplanes in the Australian flying doctor service.
- 5) The opposite of nearest is farthest.
- 6) Flying Doctors

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Who are the flying doctors?
- 2- Australia is an enormous country.
- 3- What happens when you are sick?
- 4- What happens if you need a surgery quickly?

Unit (9) Test (3)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- here 2- hear 3- plain 4- plane

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- treatment 2- disease
- 3- accident 4- hurts

3 Read the following text:

- 1- Aloe 2- honey
- 3- To treat some diseases.
- 4- Mint is good for the digestive system.
- 5- Science shows us that honey can make some infections better.

Answers Key

6- Some things that ancient Egyptians believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- have 2- mustn't
3- feels 4- help

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Paramedics drive ambulances and give first-aid.
2- Have you ever had surgery or an accident?

7 Write a paragraph:

The doctor's job is very important. It's a hard job. The doctor works in a hospital. He helps sick people. He saves the lives of people.

Unit (10)

Lessons 1 2

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- navigate 2- needle
3- magnet 4- north

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- metal 2- attract
3- pole 4- south

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- attract 2- repels
3- magnetic field 4- towards

4 Read the following text:

- 1- needle 2- north
3- It can show us which direction is north.
4- We can use the arrow on the map to read it.
5- A compass can show you which direction is north.
6- The compass and the map

5 Read, order, and write:

- 1- A compass has a magnetic needle.
2- A magnet is a piece of metal.
3- A compass helps you navigate.
4- Magnets can attract or repel other metals.
5- Why will we need a compass?

6 Write a paragraph:

A magnet is a piece of metal. It has two poles: the north pole and the south pole. It

can attract or repel other metals. A magnetic field is an area around a magnet which pulls objects towards it.

Lessons 3 4 5

1 Write the correct word:

- 1- balance 2- land 3- hit
4- bounce 5- roll 6- drop

2 Read and match:

- 1) f 2) e 3) d 4) b 5) c 6) a

3 Choose the correct word:

- 1- will learn 2- put 3- will pick
4- doesn't go 5- move 6- do 7- go
8- pull 9- will 10- move 11- drop
12- uses 13- will move 14- be 15- will

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- If I see my cousin, I'll say hello.
2- Can you make a marble roll?
3- If you don't eat breakfast, you'll be hungry.

Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- forces 2- objects
3- speed 4- movement

2 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Magnetism is a type of force.
2- Pushing and pulling are contact forces.
3- You can pull on a door handle.
4- You can push a cart.
5- Friction can slow down objects.
6- A pull force brings something towards you.
7- What will we see if we mix these liquids?

Lessons 7 8

1 Listen and write:

change - energy - bandage / village -
danger - giraffe

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- ramp 2- Measure
3- distance 3- Friction

3 Read the following text:

- 1) surfaces 2) slowly
3) We use it every day.
4) To rub out pencil marks.

- 5) Friction works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving
6) Friction Force

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- There's a giraffe in the village!
- 2- We have so much energy.
- 3- How did you do your experiment?
- 4- Friction is a contact force between two surfaces.
- 5- What will happen if we change the ramp?
- 6- We do experiments to see how friction works.

Lesson 9

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- MRI 2- organs
- 3- information 4- lives

2 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Are magnets useful in hospitals?
- 2- An X-ray can take pictures of bones.
- 3- An MRI scan can give doctors more information.
- 4- The train can travel very quickly!

3 Write a paragraph:

Magnets are useful at home. We can use magnets to keep doors closed. Magnets are used to store information in computers. Some of the most modern train systems use magnets. The magnet keeps it in the right place. The train can travel very quickly!

Unit (10) Test (4)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- danger 2- giraffe
- 3- bandage 4- village

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- compass 2- magnetic
- 3- direction 4- map

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- south 2- invisible
- 3- A magnet can attract or repel some other metals.
- 4- It's an area around a magnet which can pull objects towards it.
- 5- It can pull objects towards it.
- 6- Magnets

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- will pick 2- pushes
- 3- won't get up 4- will

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Can you make a pencil bounce?
- 2- Magnets are used to store information in computers.

7 Write a paragraph:

When I'm on holiday outside, I take a compass. I also take a magnet. I take enough food. I take different clothes. I also take a map and a tent with me.

Unit (11)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- messages 2- cell phones
- 3- time 4- websites

2 Read the following text:

- 1) messages 2) wire
- 3) A telegraph machine was the first way of sending messages quickly.
- 4) That's a code of short and long clicks.
- 5) A telegraph machine was the first way of sending messages around the world quickly.
- 6) The telegraph machine

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- You write a letter with a pen.
- 2- When was the first television invented?
- 3- I prefer to video call my friends!
- 4- What is a telegraph machine?

Lessons 2 3 4

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- used 2- is 3- made 4- sent

2 Choose the word: (Structures)

- 1- are 2- uploaded 3- are 4- used
- 5- are 6- was 7- written 8- were
- 9- are used 10- send 11- are sent
- 12- was invented 13- isn't made 14- used
- 15- is made 16- invented 17- was invented
- 18- called 19- Are 20- wasn't

3 Circle the correct words:

- 1- were 2- called 3- was 4- written
- 5- invented 6- was 7- were
- 8- were 9- invented 10- was

Answers Key

4 Make correct sentences:

- 1- Computers aren't used in all school lessons.
- 2- The telegraph machine isn't used today.
- 3- Emails aren't written with a pen and paper.
- 4- A telephone isn't used for sending video messages.

5 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Billions of emails are sent every day.
- 2- Computers are used in many offices.
- 3- Are videos watched on the internet?
- 4- The telephone was invented in 1876.
- 5- The first email was sent in 1971.

Lessons 5 6

1 Complete the words:

short - yawn - pause - straw /
audio messages - Morse Code - draw

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- cart
- 2- car
- 3- electric
- 4- trains

3 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Let's play a game.
- 2- I'm not very good at drawing!
- 3- There'll be a short pause.
- 4- I'll make an audio message.
- 5- Will it be a short audio?

4 Write a paragraph:

There are a lot of transportation types. The horse and cart is an old-fashioned type of transportation. Cars have wheels and engines. Modern cars are electric. Steam trains used fossil fuels and caused pollution. Modern high-speed trains can use magnets and go very fast.

Lessons 7 8

1 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- busy
- 2- traffic
- 3- He wants to visit his friend Wael.
- 4- He lives on the other side of the city.
- 5- They want him to travel safely.
- 6- Safe Journey

2 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- Aswan
- 2- five
- 3- As it is holiday.
- 4- Sara's Mom wants to have a comfortable journey.

- 5- Sara is taking a lot of clothes with her..
- 6- Sara and her family live in Aswan, and they want to travel to Cairo on holiday.

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Sara and her family live in Aswan.
- 2- Who is taking a lot of clothes?
- 3- Sara's dad wants to travel quickly.
- 4- The train is usually very crowded.
- 5- Cars cause pollution.
- 6- Zeinab's sisters don't like flying.

Unit (11) Test (5)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- short
- 2- yawn
- 3- pause
- 4- straw

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- traffic
- 2- road
- 3- comfortable
- 4- pollution

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- wood
- 2- is
- 3- Computers are used in many offices, stores, and businesses.
- 4- Billions of emails.
- 5- A computer is made of metal, plastic and glass.
- 6- The Computer

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- written
- 2- was invented
- 3- by
- 4- is made

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Trains cause less pollution than cars.
- 2- Are letters sent on telegraph machines?

7 Write a paragraph:

I like watching TV. I like watching cartoons. I also like watching films. I sometimes watch plays. I like watching sports programs.

Unit (12)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- community
- 2- interviewed
- 3- back page
- 4- competition

2 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- newspaper
- 2- hospital
- 3- The hospital is in the center of the city.
- 4- It has taken two years to build.

- 5- It has some of the most modern medical equipment in the country.
- 6- An important piece of news

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Where are Hany and Youssef?
- 2- There's news about our school.
- 3- What is Hany holding?
- 4- Hana wrote a cartoon for the back page.
- 5- What do you like reading?
- 6- Did you write about the swimming competition?

Lessons 2 3 4

1 Listen and write:

tunnel - vehicle - article / hospital - musical
- camel

2 Choose the word: (Structures)

- 1- was 2- were 3- was 4- were
- 5- were 6- Was 7- making 8- running
- 9- were listening 10- traveling 11- helping
- 12- was doing

3 Choose the correct word:

traveling - was - were - were - were -
saying - showing - answering

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Sherif was walking in the park.
- 2- What were the children doing?
- 3- Why did Aya get off the bus?
- 4- Did you read the article?
- 5- Dad was reading a newspaper.

7 Write a paragraph:

We were doing many things last weekend. Dad was reading a newspaper. Mom was cooking. My brother Tarek was watching a movie on TV. We were busy.

Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Journalists 2- layout
- 3- production 4- distribution

2 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- specialist 2- story
- 3- The managing editor chooses which news stories to put in the newspaper.
- 4- A journalist writes a news story.
- 5- It is distributed to shops.
- 6- A newspaper takes many steps before you buy it at a shop.

4 Read, order, and write:

- 1- A journalist writes about an interesting event.
- 2- Lots of people read newspapers.
- 3- Making a newspaper is very hard work.
- 4- How are newspapers made?
- 5- Newspapers need to have advertisements in them.

Lessons 6 7 8

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- updated 2- news
- 3- media 4- useful

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- live 2- TV
- 3- Newsreaders 4- videos

3 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Where do we get our news from?
- 2- Journalists travel all over the world.
- 3- We watch the news on television.
- 4- Newsreaders present the news.
- 5- My parents buy a newspaper every day.
- 6- Who listens to the news on the radio?

Unit (12) Test (6)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- musical 2- article
- 3- tunnel hospital

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Journalists 2- facts
- 3- interview 4- editor

3 Read the following text and answer:

- 1- television 2- quickly 3- Newsreaders.
- 4- We can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.
- 5- Adam's family like to watch the news on TV. They can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.
- 6- On TV

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- running 2- Were
- 3- talking 4- was cooking

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- What were you doing in the library?
- 2- Newspapers need to have advertisements in them.

7 Write a paragraph:

My dad likes reading the newspaper. He likes reading news stories. He reads them to know what's going on in the world. He reads the newspaper every day. He likes reading Al Ahram.

Part 2

Final Revision

Unit (7)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Identical 2- Non-identical
3- different 4- look like

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- parents 2- fur
3- inherit 4- traits

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- siblings 2- triplets
3- quadruplets 4- behave

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1- pollen 2- birds
3- cells 4- seeds

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- is wearing 2- play 3- is sleeping
4- likes 5- doesn't 6- reading
7- don't 8- wearing 9- make
10- wears 11- do 12- makes
13- like 14- washing 15- helping

6 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- played 2- didn't 3- have used
4- watched 5- finished 6- ride
7- has known 8- helped 9- learned
10- did 11- built 12- walked 13- Did
14- Has 15- visit

7 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- used 2- to 3- have 4- used 5- didn't
6- live 7- play 8- didn't 9- wear 10- use

8 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Last year, I learned to swim.
2- I used to play the flute.
3- Does Amir play the guitar well?
4- What did you do last week?
5- I'm painting a picture of you!
6- The flowers produce pollen grains.

- 7- Lama is learning to walk!
8- Tarek is my baby brother.
9- The water lily has flat leaves.
10- Insects land on the plants.
11- What are you doing now, Ali?
12- Does Younis have curly hair?
13- Newborn rabbits don't have any fur.
14- Plants are living organisms.
15- Rabbits have lots of predators.
16- Offspring inherit some traits from their parents.
17- Twins can be identical or non-identical.
18- Which plant has adapted to eat insects?
19- The date palm has deep roots.
20- What plants are there in the desert?

Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- jewel 2- cube 3- true 4- glue

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- organisms 2- reproduce
3- Sphinx 4- offspring

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- baby 2- walk 3- Amir is 13.
4- He is helping his brother Adam.
5- He is building a tower.
6- My Family

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- play 2- eat 3- gone 4- buy

6 Read, write, and order:

- 1- I usually go to school on Mondays.
2- Rabbits adapted to have long ears.

7 Write a paragraph:

I love my family. My sister is a toddler. My brother is in primary one. My mom likes watching TV. I play with my brother and my sister.

Unit (8)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Artists 2- styles
2- shading 3- dimensional

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- temples 2- statues
3- ancient 4- ancient

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- pattern 2- create
3- shapes 4- realistic

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- are 2- is 3- boys 4- water
5- much 6- many 7- wood 8- sculptures
9- is 10- are 11- any 12- some 13- is
14- aren't 15- Are 16- Is

5 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Egyptians used precious metals such as gold.
2- How do you like to learn?
3- The images are very interesting.
4- We can learn about our culture.
5- There are some bowls on the table.
6- Would you like some water?
7- There are lots of things to see.
8- How do you do shading?
9- We'll see some tools.
10- How many necklaces are there?
11- Why do artists use shading?
12- The sculpture was made of clay.
13- Today we are at the museum.
14- Artifacts and tools are very interesting.
15- I like seeing things in museums.

Unit (8) Test (2)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- sea creature 2- pleasure
3- adventure 4- treasure

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- artifacts 2- Archaeologists
3- tombs 4- models

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- famous 2- temples
3- Today, we can see paintings, sculptures, jewelry and other artifacts from thousands of years ago.
4- Because Egypt is a very dry country.
5- The opposite of dry is wet.
6- Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- paper 2- aren't 3- are 4- some

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- How many books are there in the library?

- 2- Geometric shapes can create realistic patterns.

7 Write a paragraph:

Egypt is full of artifacts. There are the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. There are lots of temples in Luxor and Aswan. There are lots of museums in Egypt.

Unit (9)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- hurts 2- medicine
3- operation 4- treat

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- time 2- mustn't
3- be 4- must

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- emergency 2- paramedics
3- first aid 4- helicopters

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1- treatment 2- disease
3- ill 4- accident

5 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Papyrus 2- surgery
3- treatments 4- supply

6 Read and complete the text:

- 1- leg 2- helmet
3- hurt 4- cast

7 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- have 2- mustn't 3- feels 4- must
5- don't water 6- do 7- doesn't do
8- must 9- has 10- mustn't 11- gets
12- eat 13- hurt 14- eat 15- drink
16- play 17- must

9 Read, order, and write:

- 1- I've had an X-ray.
2- Was Hany wearing a helmet yesterday?
3- Who has an injury?
4- Have you ever been to a hospital?
5- Can you see the sea?
6- You must take your medicine regularly.
7- I can see and hear the sea.
8- Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations.
9- You mustn't run in the corridors.

Answers Key

- 10- The heart is the center of the blood supply.
- 11- You can call the flying doctors!
- 12- You must respect your teachers.
- 13- Doctors and nurses wear face masks.
- 14- What happens when you are sick?

Unit (9) Test (3)

1 Listen and write:

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1- flour | 2- flower |
| 3- sea | 4- see |

2 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1- equipment | 2- hospitals |
| 3- operations | 4- airplanes |

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- helicopters
- 2- paramedics
- 3- In an emergency.
- 4- They can give you first aid very quickly.
- 5- They can save lives.
- 6- Flying Doctors

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- cycle 2- play 3- touch 4- must

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Have you ever taken medicine, Mona?
- 2- Mint is good for the digestive system.

7 Write a paragraph:

When I'm sick, I sometimes go to hospital. I see a doctor. I take the medicine on time. I take some rest. And I eat healthy food.

Unit (10)

1 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1- north | 2- attracts |
| 3- repels | 4- field |

2 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1- Friction | 2- surfaces |
| 3- eraser | 4- direction |

3 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1- nails | 2- swallow |
| 3- attracts | 4- digestive |

4 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1- pulling | 2- contact |
| 3- movement | 4- speed |

5 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------------|--------------|
| 1- will | 2- has | 3- won't | 4- will help |
| 5- visits | 6- Will | 7- will | 8- Will |
| 9- doesn't | 10- stay | 11- will come | |
| 12- feel | 13- Will | 14- won't | |
| 15- put | 16- will | | |

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Magnets have a north pole and a south pole.
- 2- Friction can slow down objects.
- 3- I love making adventure.
- 4- Magnetism is a type of force.
- 5- We'll need a compass.
- 6- How did you do your experiment?
- 7- The magnetic needle points to the North Pole.
- 8- Are magnets useful in hospitals?
- 9- You can hit or bounce a ball.
- 10- A pull force brings something towards you.
- 11- Computers use magnets to store information.
- 12- Magnets are useful at home and at school.
- 13- We know that cows eat grass.
- 14- Farmers give cows a magnet to swallow.
- 15- Pushing and pulling are contact forces.

Unit (10) Test (4)

1 Listen and write:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1- bandage | 2- energy |
| 3- village | 4- danger |

2 Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1- compass | 2- needle |
| 3- map | 4- read |

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- train
- 2- transportation
- 3- Because big magnets can sort out materials for recycling, or even move old cars.
- 4- We use magnets to store information in computers.
- 5- Magnets are very useful. We can use magnets in factories and transportation.
- 6- Magnets

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- will be 2- don't 3- gets 4- won't

6 Read, write, and order:

- 1- A compass has a magnetic needle.
- 2- Can you make a marble roll?

7 Write a paragraph:

Magnets are useful for farming. Sometimes cows eat nails and metal wires. Farmers give them magnets to swallow. This protects their digestive system.

Unit (11)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Telegraph
- 2- messages
- 3- signals
- 4- wire

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- ferry
- 2- transportation
- 3- journey
- 4- subway

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- letters
- 2- telegrams
- 3- information
- 4- Morse Code

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1- understood
- 2- office
- 3- paper
- 4- delivered

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- was invented
- 2- called
- 3- is made
- 4- is spoken
- 5- eaten
- 6- are found
- 7- helped
- 8- were taken
- 9- was written
- 10- were bought
- 11- were flown
- 12- was sent
- 13- uploaded
- 14- are
- 15- are

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Morse Code was invented by Samuel Morse.
- 2- Telegrams were used by people.
- 3- Is it a smart phone?
- 4- A ferry is transportation on water.
- 5- Sara's mom wants the journey to be comfortable.
- 6- Planes cause the most pollution.
- 7- Planes are the most comfortable.
- 8- There isn't much room for lots of bags.
- 9- Sara took a lot of clothes with her.
- 10- What is a telegraph machine?
- 11- The telephone was invented in 1876.
- 12- I'll make an audio message.
- 13- The train is usually very crowded.
- 14- Sara's dad wants to travel quickly.

Unit (11) Test (5)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- audio message
- 2- draw
- 3- straw
- 4- Morse

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- communication
- 2- telephone
- 3- email
- 4- quicker

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- letters
- 2- long
- 3- The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away.
- 4- They were written in Morse Code.
- 5- The opposite of easy is difficult.
- 6- The Telegraph

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- are
- 2- cleaned
- 3- are eaten
- 4- were written

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The photos are uploaded onto a website.
- 2- I prefer to video call my friends.

7 Write a paragraph:

I go to school by bus. My mom goes to work by taxi. My dad goes to work in his car. I sometimes go to the park by bike. I sometimes go on foot.

Unit (12)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- newspaper
- 2- competition
- 3- interviewed
- 4- medal

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- layout
- 2- printing
- 3- newspapers
- 4- shops

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- radio
- 2- presenters
- 3- program
- 4- listening

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1- news
- 2- hospital
- 3- build
- 4- medical

5 Read and complete the text:

- 1- press
- 2- metal
- 3- printed
- 3- production

Answers Key

6 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- was 2- were 3- were 4- Was
5- looking 6- visiting 7- making
8- was riding 9- were reading 10- were
11- walking 12- was running

7 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Does your school have a newspaper?
2- I interviewed the headteacher yesterday.
3- There's a photo of you with the article.
4- Sherif was sitting on the floor!
5- Who reads the news on social media?
6- Tarek was playing tennis with Omar.
7- The newsreaders read stories from around the world.
8- Lots of newspapers have articles and stories.
9- The children were making breakfast.
10- Why was Walid talking to Mr Hassan?
11- I was reading my geography book.
12- The journalist writes a news story.
13- The newspapers are packed overnight.
14- Dad likes reading the sports articles.
15- People can share stories on social media.
16- Who likes watching interviews with people?

Unit (12) Test (6)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- camel 2- vehicle
3- article 4- hospital

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- journalist 2- editor
3- layout 4- distributed

4 Read the text and answer:

- 1- ask questions 2- music
3- Gamila's mom likes listening to the news on the radio when she is in her car or at home.
4- The radio presenters explain everything very clearly.
5- The radio
6- People listen to the radio for many things. Some people like listening to news; other people like listening to music.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- was 2- making
3- was cooking 4- traveling

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Who watches the news on television?
2- Mom was reading a newspaper yesterday.

7 Write a paragraph:

My favorite sport is football. I like it because it's interesting. I play it with my friends. I play it three times every week.

Part 3

Revision Tests

Revision Test (1)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- new 2- June 3- treasure 4- glue

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- rainforest 2- desert
3- ponds 4- adapt

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- do 2- before
3- They look left and right before they cross the road.
4- They play at school or at the club.
5- They listen to their fathers, mothers and teachers.
6- Good pupils behave in a special way. They behave very well at school; with their parents, teachers, and friends, and in the street.

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- is 2- has 3- written 4- have

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Doctors in ancient Egypt could do operations.
2- What were the children doing yesterday morning?

7 Write a paragraph:

Every Friday, we go to the park. I go with my family. We eat lunch there. We drink fresh juice. We play and enjoy.

Revision Test (2)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- jewel 2- cube
3- adventure 4- measure

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Paintings 2- afterlife
3- metals 4- artifacts

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- ice cream 2- orange juice
3- Every Thursday.
4- She buys tomatoes, peas, potatoes and lettuce.
5- She buys bananas, apples and strawberries.
6- Mom's Shopping Habits

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- doesn't eat 2- live 3- paper 4- are used

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- The train is usually very crowded.
2- You must arrive at school on time.

7 Write a paragraph:

I go to the school library from time to time. There are lots of boys and girls there. There are lots of interesting books there. Also, there are magazines. I learn new information every time I go there.

Revision Test (3)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- glue 2- write 3- right 4- change

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- patients 2- hearts
3- blood 4- syringe

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- talk to 2- intelligent
3- Some dolphins live in rivers, and some live in the sea.
4- Because their meat is important food for people in many countries.
5- Dolphins are large sea animals. They are similar to fish.
6- Dolphins are intelligent and nice sea creatures. Dolphins are in danger now because some people kill them for meat.

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- many 2- was invented
3- use 4- gets

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Have you ever had an accident?
2- Computers are used in many offices.

7 Write a paragraph:

My father is a doctor. He works in a hospital. He helps sick people. He goes to work at 9 o'clock. I want to be a doctor in the future.

Revision Test (4)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- sea creature 2- wear
3- where 4- bandage

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- friction 2- contact
2- speed 3- movement

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- a boy and girl 2- car
3- They went to the beach.
4- Because his children dropped some litter on the beach.
5- They spent ten hours on the beach.
6- They went home at eight.

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- go 2- Are 3- pushes 4- are sent

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts.
2- When was the first television invented?

7 Write a paragraph:

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures, jewelry and other artifacts from thousands of years ago in the museum. There are many statues and paintings. There are many sculptures, too. I like visiting the museum a lot.

Revision Test (5)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- sea 2- see 3- village 4- yawn

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- cart 2- animal
3- pollution 3- magnets

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- five 2- building
3- Nader was telling Sherif his favorite dreams.
4- He was giving some money to his family.
5- He was a businessman.

Answers Key

6- Yes, he was very happy.

5 Choose the correct word:

1- some 2- done 3- must 4- move

6 Read, order, and write:

1- Do you like learning about the past?
2- I've never climbed a mountain.

7 Write a paragraph:

Last summer, we went to the beach. It was very sunny. We swam. We played games. We enjoyed a lot.

Revision Test (6)

1 Listen and write:

1- blue 2- flour 3- flower 4- giraffe

2 Read and complete the text:

1- editors 2- layout
3- advertising 4- distribution

3 Read the text and answer:

1- other 2- like
3- They spend a lot of time playing or watching TV.
4- They often go to bed late at night.
5- They learn to do things with their hands, to speak and to play.
6- Children's Behavior

4 Choose the correct word:

1- any 2- helps 3- have 4- will pick

6 Read, order, and write:

1- Why do artists use shading?
2- A compass has a magnetic needle.

7 Write a paragraph:

Last month, we went on a trip to the pyramids. The weather was sunny. We took lots of photographs. We enjoyed ourselves a lot. We went home happy.

Revision Test (7)

1 Listen and write:

1- short 2- straw 3- camel 4- music

2 Read and complete the text:

1- species 2- characteristics
3- survive 4- leaf

3 Read the text and answer:

1- lunch 2- vegetable

3- Samy ordered chicken, rice and potatoes. Hesham ordered fish and fruit salad. Samy drank tea, but Hesham drank fruit juice.

4- the waiter gave them the menu.

5- Because the place was clean and comfortable. The waiters were also very nice.

6- Samy and Hesham went to the restaurant. They enjoyed themselves.

5 Choose the correct word:

1- doesn't go 2- is learning
3- must 4- aren't

6 Read, write, and order:

1- The sculpture was made of clay.
2- Are magnets useful in hospitals and schools?

7 Write a paragraph:

My birthday was last Monday. I had a nice party. I invited my friends. They gave me presents. Mom made us a cake. We sang and played games. We were very happy.

Revision Test (8)

1 Listen and write:

1- audio 2- tunnel 3- article 4- hospital

2 Read and complete the text:

1- operations 2- injuries
3- heart 4- organs

3 Read the text and answer:

1- brother 2- giraffe
3- They go to the zoo.
4- They are nine years old.
5- They go on foot.
6- The giraffe has a long neck. The giraffe eats carrots and lettuce.

5 Choose the correct word:

1- seen 2- uses 3- called 4- traveling

6 Read, order, and write:

1- The date palm has deep roots.
2- How did you do your experiment?

7 Write a paragraph:

In Egypt, the weather is hot in summer. It's cold in winter. It's warm in spring. It's cool in fall. The weather is nice here.

Revision Test (9)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- danger 2- vehicle
3- flute 4- new

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- x-ray 2- bones
3- information 4- useful

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- bus 2- two
3- Reem is 8 years old.
4- She lives in Cairo.
5- Reem's father is a teacher.
6- Youssef is ten years old.

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- were 2- be 3- climb 4- Are

6 Read, order, and write:

- 1- Are letters sent on telegraph machines?
2- Hana wrote a cartoon for the back page.

7 Write a paragraph:

My name is (....). I'm in grade three. I live in Qena. I go to El Nasr School. I go to school by bus. I love my family. I play with my friends. I have lots of different hobbies.

Revision Test (10)

1 Listen and write:

- 1- tunnel 2- true 3- pleasure 4- hear

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- telegraph 2- Morse Code
3- clicks 4- machine

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- fourteen 2- fishing
3- Every summer holiday.
4- They have their lunch at the hotel.
5- They stay in a small hotel near the sea at Sidi Bishr.
6- Saber's Summer Holiday

5 Choose the correct word:

- 1- will 2- was 3- eat 4- making

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Rabbits have adapted to have long ears.
2- Honey can make some infections better.

7 Write a paragraph:

The first-aid kit is very useful. When someone is hurt or injured, it helps a lot. It has bandages and other useful things. It can help also if there is an accident.